

Department of the Army

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR
HEADQUARTERS
AVIATION SUPPORT
BATTALION, DIGITIZED
DIVISION**

November 1999

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
63-385-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 15 November 1999

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
BATTALION HEADQUARTERS
AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION, DIGITIZED DIVISION**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
Preface.....	iii
Chapter 1. Unit Training.....	1-1
1-1 GENERAL.....	1-1
1-2 SUPPORTING MATERIAL.....	1-1
1-3 CONTENTS	1-1
1-4 MISSIONS.....	1-3
1-5 PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING	1-4
1-6 TRAINING STRATEGY	1-4
1-7 CONDUCTING TRAINING	1-5
1-8 FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY).....	1-6
1-9 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION.....	1-13
1-10 EVALUATION	1-15
1-11 FEEDBACK	1-15
Chapter 2. Training Matrix	2-1
2-1 GENERAL.....	2-1
2-2 MISSION-TO-COLLECTIVE TASKS MATRIX.....	2-1
Chapter 3. Training Plans	3-1
3-1 GENERAL.....	3-1
3-2 LONG-RANGE PLANNING	3-1
3-3 SHORT-RANGE PLANNING	3-5
3-4 NEAR-TERM PLANNING	3-7
3-5 TRAINING THE BATTALION HEADQUARTERS.....	3-7
3-6 DEVELOPMENT OF TRAINING EXERCISES	3-9
3-7 MISSION OUTLINE	3-10

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

Chapter 4.	Training Exercises.....	4-1
	4-1 GENERAL.....	4-1
	4-2 FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE.....	4-1
	4-3 SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE.....	4-2
	4-4 SAFETY.....	4-2
	4-5 VISUALIZATION.....	4-2
Chapter 5.	Training and Evaluation Outlines.....	5-1
	5-1 INTRODUCTION.....	5-1
	5-2 STRUCTURE.....	5-1
	5-3 FORMAT.....	5-1
	5-4 USE.....	5-3
Chapter 6.	External Evaluations.....	6-1
	6-1 INTRODUCTION.....	6-1
	6-2 PREPARING THE EVALUATION.....	6-1
	6-3 SELECTING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS.....	6-9
	6-4 TRAINING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS.....	6-9
	6-5 SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR.....	6-10
	6-6 CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION.....	6-11
	6-7 RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION.....	6-13
	6-8 CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW.....	6-18
Appendix A	Combined Arms Training Strategy.....	A-1
Appendix B	Battlefield Operating Systems.....	B-1
Glossary.....		Glossary-1
References.....		References-1
Questionnaire.....		Questionnaire-1

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Aviation Support Battalion (ASB) Commander and S3 with a task-based, event-driven training strategy to enable the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. While MTPs may not cover unit contingency plans, this document includes tasks to meet the Army force projection mission and includes tasks related to deployment, establishment of logistics operational areas, redeployment, base defense and multi-functional logistics support operations.

This MTP applies to the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (TOE 63385F000), Division Support Command (6302F000). The ASB is a new and digitized organization. The battalion is multifunctional and its commander has assumed key logistics roles in support of the Aviation Brigade and Division Cavalry Squadron. The ASB commander is the Aviation Brigade commander's battle logistician. The ASB supports the Aviation Brigade and the Cavalry Squadron by providing or coordinating field services, combat health services support, classes of supply (supply point and unit distribution), field maintenance and aviation intermediate maintenance (AVIM). The ASB can function in a dispersed manner to support the Cavalry Squadron or Attack Battalion when they are operating forward of the Aviation Support Area. The ASB may dispatch and attach AVIM and ground maintenance teams and fueling and ammunition assets forward to augment the Forward Support Battalions, who in turn provide area logistics support to Division Cavalry. This arrangement requires close coordination between HQ, Forward Support Battalion, HQ, Aviation Support Battalion and Division Cavalry Squadron.

The overarching principle of "fix forward" remains unchanged. In the redesigned division, maintenance procedures and doctrinal methods are changed to gain greater effectiveness and efficiencies. For the most part, direct support and unit maintenance functions are consolidated and are now called field maintenance. This applies to the mechanized and armor maneuver battalions, engineer battalion, brigade headquarters, division headquarters and reconnaissance troop. The aviation units, cavalry squadron, division troops and field artillery battalions retain their unit maintenance sections.

Force XXI combat service support (CSS) concepts and organizations reflect a paradigm shift from a supply-based CSS system of the Army of Excellence (AOE) to an advanced distribution-based structure. Technology makes this shift possible. The Force XXI distribution-based system eliminates most stockpiles, substituting velocity for mass. Logisticians use computers to control the destination, speed, and volume of the distribution system. With in-transit visibility (ITV), total asset visibility (TAV), advanced materiel management, and advanced decision support system technology, Force XXI logisticians will have access and visibility over all of the items within the distribution pipeline.

Force XXI Battle Command, Brigade and Below (FBCB2) is a digital Battle Command Information System that provides on the move, real-time and near real-time information to brigade combat, combat support, and combat service support leaders and soldiers. FBCB2 at the weapon system level, interfaces with FBCB2 at company and battalion level, provide situational awareness on every weapon system platform within the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron as well as access to the Tactical Internet. The FBCB2 system interfaces with the Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS) at ASB level to provide a concise picture of unit requirements and support capabilities by collecting, processing and displaying information on key items of supplies, services and personnel that the commander deem crucial to the success of an operation. The integration of all Battlefield Operating System information provides significant tactical and operational advantage.

Standards for executing the tasks are described in the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs). Standards were developed to meet the Total Army requirement. To meet mission-essential requirements, commanders may wish to make standards more stringent. The intent of this publication is not to deny the commander that flexibility.

Training developers continuously update individual and collective tasks and other support products for these manuals in the ASAT database. Units can get data updates for Standard Army Training System (SATS) online via the Internet at Training Module Executive Management Information System (TEXMIS), <http://206.135.244.11> or <http://www.satsbbs.com>.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 and forward it to Commander, United States Combined Arms Support Command, ATTN: ATCL-A, 401 1st Street, Suite 229, Fort Lee, Virginia 23801.

Unless otherwise stated, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both women and men.

Chapter 1

Unit Training

1-1. GENERAL. This mission training plan (MTP) provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program depends on the following factors:

- a. Unit's mission-essential task list (METL).
- b. Chain of command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL. This MTP describes a critical mission-oriented unit training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This unit's training program consists of:

- a. ARTEP 63-02F-MTP which indicates the relationship of the next higher headquarters training program to the unit's training program.
- b. The soldier's manuals (SMs) and trainer's guides (TGs) (soldier training publications [STPs]) for each military occupational specialty (MOS) authorized in the table of organization and equipment (TOE) for the unit.
- c. The soldier's manuals of common tasks (SMCTs).
- d. The military qualification standards (MQS) -I and MQS-II manuals for company grade officers.

The relationship of these publications is shown in Figure 1-1.

1-3. CONTENTS. This MTP is organized into six chapters and two appendices:

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between missions and collective tasks.

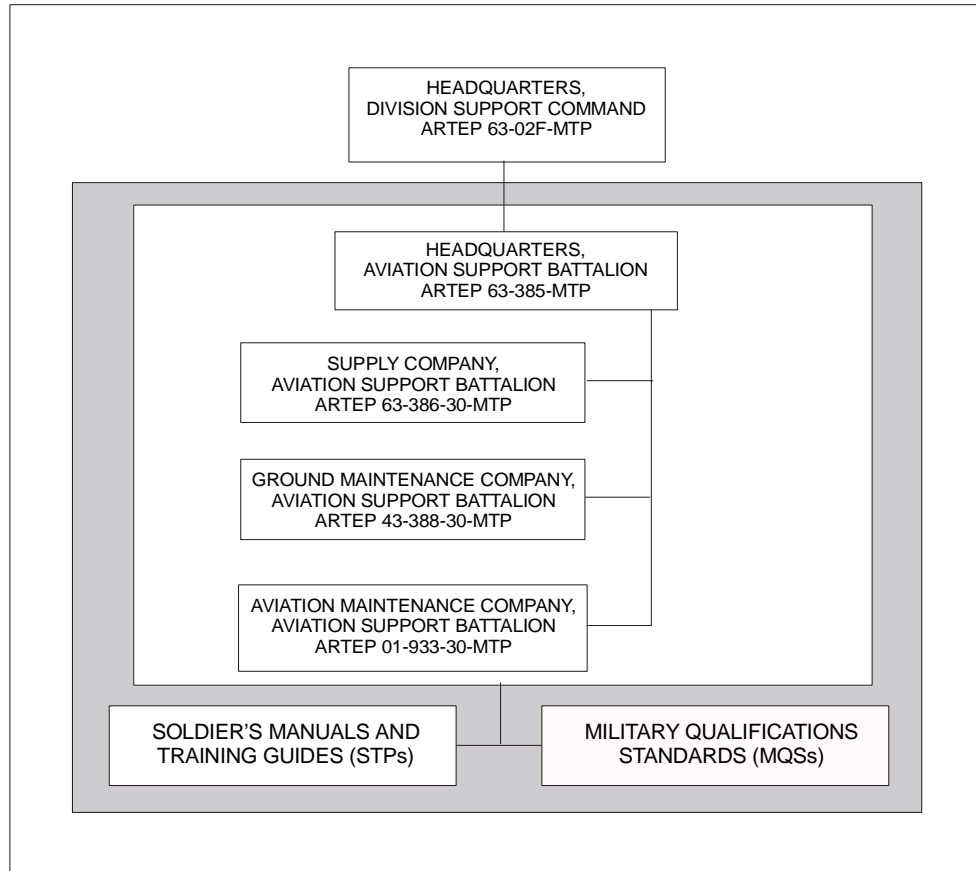


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

c. Chapter 3, Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX) and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a training and evaluation outline (T&EO) that identifies task steps, performance measures, and individual and leader tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, Evaluations, explains how to evaluate training and assess evaluation results. It includes sample worksheets, summary sheets, and evaluation scenarios.

g. Appendix A, Combined Arms Training Strategy, provides user information, a description of the training strategy, and a task template.

h. Appendix B, Battlefield Operating Systems (BOSs) Definitions, provides current descriptions of each BOS.

1-4. MISSIONS. This MTP concerns specified missions found in the TOE and implied missions that this unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical wartime mission is the focal mission for this unit (Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements). The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of missions for this unit:

a. Missions:

(1) 63-1-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations.

(2) 63-1-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements.

(3) 63-1-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources.

(4) 63-1-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities.

(5) 63-1-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements.

(6) 63-1-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities.

(7) 63-1-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station.

b. Each of these missions may be trained individually or jointly with other missions. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by next higher echelon to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Leader tasks that support the unit's missions are trained through STP and officer foundation system (OFS) training, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's missions.

d. Individual tasks that support collective tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING. This MTP is based on the training principles found in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101. For further information, see Paragraph 1-7 below.

1-6. TRAINING STRATEGY. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical missions is a component of the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army trains and identifies the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to the CATS is a series of proponent generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. A unit's training strategy is composed of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of a unit's training strategy are:

(1) Combined Arms Training Strategy. CATS is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery Strategy. The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit, provides an annual training plan, and depicts resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or appropriate field manual (FM).

(3) Soldier Strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

c. A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting a FTX and a STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of his soldiers, or unit(s), to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

d. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies the training tasks from the MTP required to train his METL.

1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING. This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

a. The commander assigns the missions and tasks for training based on his METL and the training guidance from the next higher headquarters. Trainers must plan and execute training in support of this guidance.

b. The commander reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the FTX and STXs provided will support or can be modified to support the senior commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. The matrix provides a listing of collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. The commander prioritizes the tasks that need training. He never has time to train everything. He must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. The commander integrates training tasks into the training schedule by:

(1) Listing the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determining the amount of time required and how multiechelon training can be used for the best results.

(3) Determining where the training can take place.

(4) Determining who is responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organizing his requirements into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The commander must approve the list of tasks to be trained and schedule them on the unit training schedule.

f. The commander must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The commander must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations and begins with readiness. Readiness determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performing to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and service.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will

have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include:

(1) Commanders, who must:

- (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
- (b) Specify the risk acceptable to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Staff, who must:

(a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and develop risk reduction options for training.

(b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assess safety performance during training; evaluate safety performance during after action reviews (AARs).

(3) Subordinate leaders, who must:

(a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers, who must:

(a) Report unsafe conditions, act, and correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

(e) Modify own risk behavior.

d. Death or serious injury may result if personnel fail to observe safety precautions. Potential safety hazards include, but are not limited to, the following areas:

(1) Fuel Flammable/No Smoking.

(a) Fuel is flammable and toxic to eyes, skin, and the respiratory tract. Skin/eye protection is required. Avoid repeated/prolonged contact. Use only in well ventilated areas. Keep away from open flames or other sources of ignition. Post FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING signs around the area. Suitable fire extinguishers must be present.

(b) Fuel or clothing can be fatal if ignited by a static discharge. If fuel gets on your clothes, leave the refueling area as soon as possible and wet clothes with water before removing them. In extreme cold conditions, clothes should not be wet; instead, ground yourself to a piece of grounded equipment by taking hold of it before removing clothing. Wash skin with warm soapy water.

(c) Spilled fuel creates a flammable, vapor-air mixture and fire can occur. Improper positioning of external fuel source can cause the internal fuel tank to overflow. Stop refueling immediately if a fuel spill occurs.

(2) Frostbite. Touching cold metal with exposed skin will cause skin to bond with metal. Gloves are required when touching cold metal objects. Do not touch cold metal parts with bare hands.

(3) Solvent Hazard. Dry cleaning solvent, P-D 680, Type III, used to clean parts is potentially dangerous to personnel and property. Eye protection is required. Avoid repeated and prolonged skin contact by wearing rubber or nonporous gloves when handling solvents or material wet with dry cleaning solvent. Wash hands with soap and water immediately after exposure and use lanolin based skin cream to prevent skin drying. Do not use near open flame or excessive heat.

Flash point of solvent is 138 degrees F. Do not work with solvent in a closed area. Be sure there is good ventilation or the solvent vapors will build up in the air and become a poisonous mixture that can cause physical injury or even death.

(4) **Electrical High Voltage.** Electrical high voltage cannot be seen, but it can kill. Electricity is unlike most other dangers because it gives no warning and no symptoms; and its effects are immediate. It can cause severe burns, unconsciousness, and even death. To ensure the safety of all personnel, always observe the following precautions:

(a) **DO NOT** perform any maintenance on electrical equipment unless all power is removed.

(b) **BE CERTAIN** that a second individual is assisting who can remove power immediately.

(c) **ALWAYS** place **POWER OFF** warning tags on power switches so that no one will apply power while you are performing maintenance.

(d) For **ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION**, refer to FM 21-11.

(5) **Compressed Air Hazard.** Compressed air can blow dust into the eyes. Wear eye protection. Do not exceed 30 psi at the nozzle. **FIRST AID** instructions are given in FM 21-11.

(6) **Hot Components.** Contact with hot components can cause burns. Allow unit to cool down before attempting service, inspection, or maintenance activity.

(7) **Jewelry.** Jewelry can catch on equipment and cause injury, or may short across an electrical circuit and cause severe burns or electrical shock. Remove rings, bracelets, wristwatches, and neck chains before working around or on the unit.

(8) **Carbon Monoxide (Exhaust Fumes).** Carbon monoxide is a lethal, odorless, and colorless gas. Breathing carbon monoxide produces symptoms of headaches, dizziness, loss of muscular control, sleepiness, and coma. Brain damage or death can result from heavy exposure. Carbon monoxide occurs in the exhaust fumes of burning heaters and internal combustion engines. Carbon monoxide can become dangerously concentrated under conditions of no ventilation. Precautions must be followed to ensure operator's safety when combustion engines are in operation.

(a) **OPERATE** with the exhaust pipes unobstructed.

(b) DO NOT operate the powered module with a known exhaust (combustion air) leak.

(c) BE ALERT at all times during operating procedures for carbon monoxide poisoning. If exposure is present, IMMEDIATELY evacuate personnel to fresh air.

(d) BE AWARE the chemical/biological mask WILL NOT protect you from carbon monoxide poisoning.

THE BEST DEFENSE AGAINST CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING IS GOOD VENTILATION.

(9) Steel Banding. Steel banding, cut under tension, can snap free and cause injury. Leather gloves and face shields are required.

e. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are:

(1) Identify Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) Assess Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-2) is a tool for assessing hazards.

(3) Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into plans, OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs, and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow-up and after action. Develop the lessons learned.

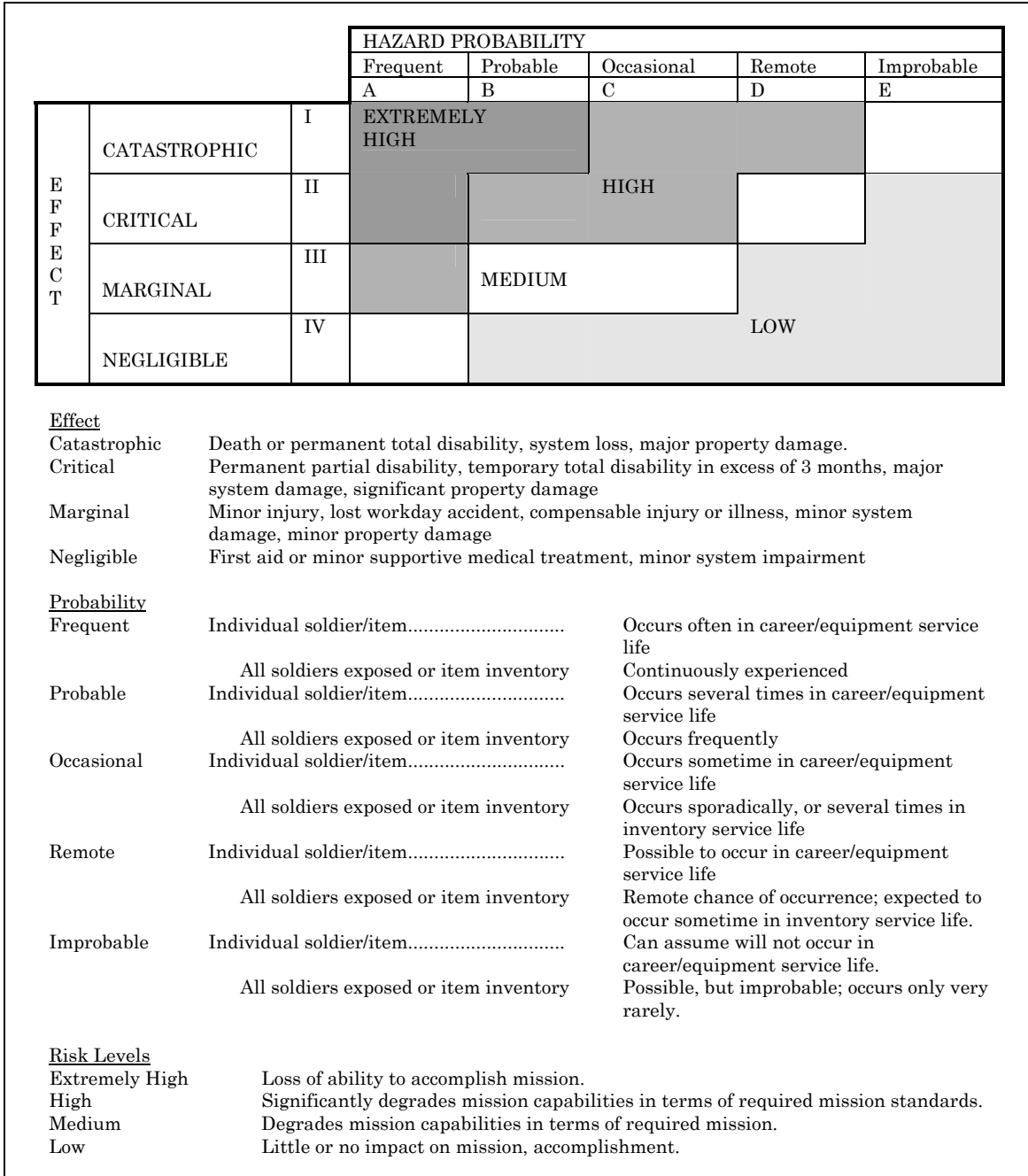


Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix

f. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled. The primary causes of fratricide are:

(1) Direct Fire Control Plan Failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land Navigation Failures. These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat Identification Failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity, mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate Control Measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting Communication Failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons Error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to gunnery errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield Hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, family of scatterable mines (FASCAM), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit leadership.

(2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

- (4) Over supervision of units.
- (5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (7) Loss of initiative.
- (8) Disrupted operations.
- (9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION. Protection of natural resources is an ever increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. **Identify Hazards.** Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. **Assess the Hazard.** Analyze potential severity of environmental degradation using environmental risk assessment matrixes (Figure 1-3). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrixes.

c. **Make Environmental Risk Decisions.** Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. **Brief Chain of Command.** Brief chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

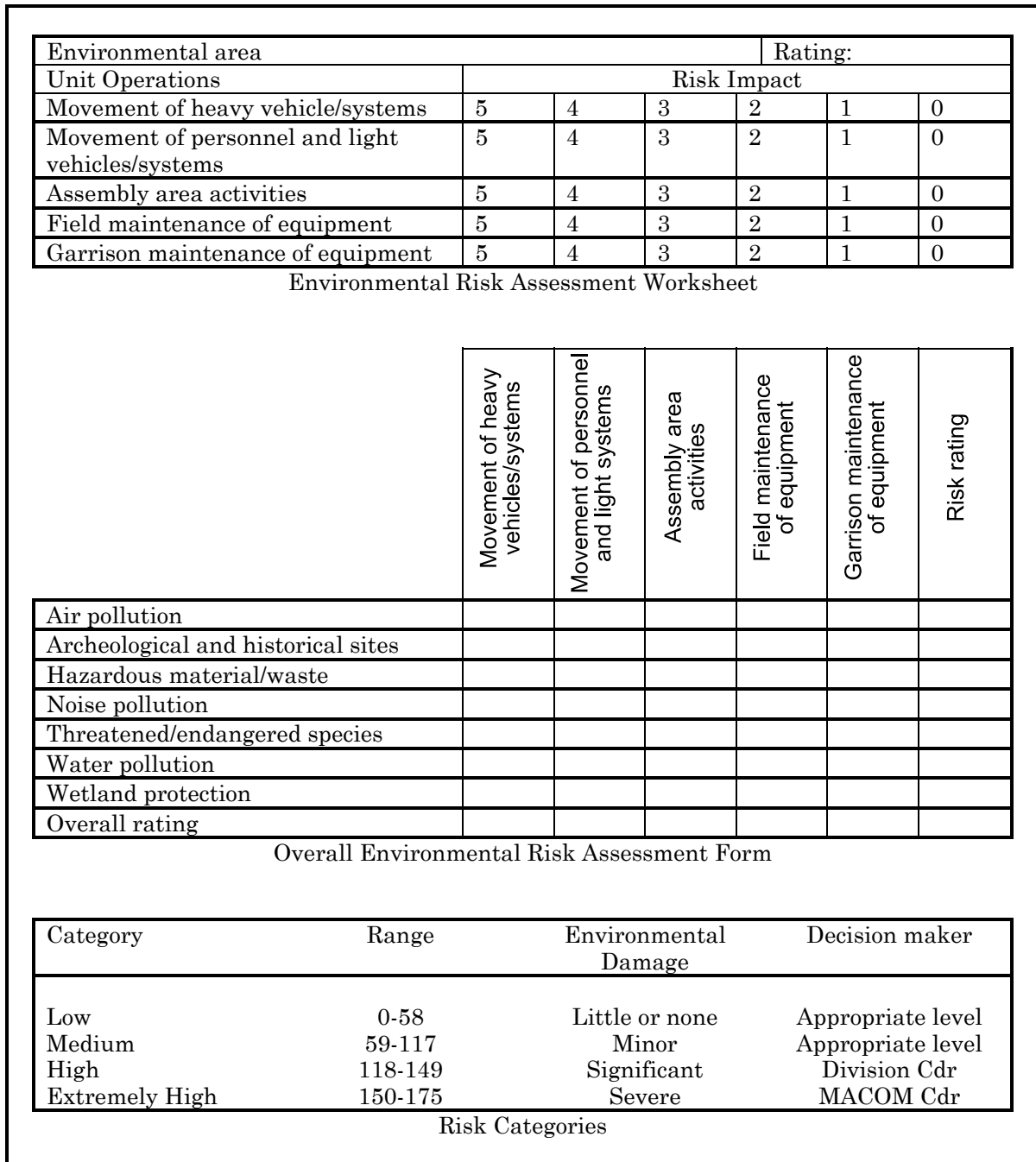


Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

e. Implement Controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

g. Environmental damage has many wide-ranging consequences. The complete success of the tactical mission depends on your environmental awareness. Leaders and soldiers must be aware of the ramifications of their actions on the environment, which, in turn, reflects upon the overall mission. Prevention of spills and improper disposal of hazardous waste is everyone's responsibility. Know the proper procedures for preventing and reporting oil or fuel spills IAW local unit SOP.

1-10. EVALUATION. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated. (See Chapter 6, Evaluations.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often, soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard; then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but the opportunity for correction should not be overlooked. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and prevents reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. FEEDBACK. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field and parallel requirements by training and combat developers. There is a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations and comments.

Chapter 2

Training Matrix

2-1. GENERAL. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table	
Mission Title	Mission Number
Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0002
Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0010
Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0005
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0006
Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0011
Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0008
Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	63-2-E0009

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the mission and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an "X" in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

Collective Tasks	63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
Intelligence							
63-1-4051 PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)		X				X	
Maneuver							
63-1-4015 PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/ QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)			X	X			X
63-1-4016 ESTABLISH BATTALION POST (FORWARD) (DIGITIZED)			X	X			
63-1-4018 COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE UNITS (DIGITIZED)			X				
62-1-4019 SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED)				X			
63-1-4020 ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED)				X			
63-1-8050 DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	X						

Collective Tasks		63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-8051	ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	X						
63-1-8052	OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	X						
63-1-8053	SUPERVISE BATTALION DEPLOYMENT/REDEPL OYMENT ACTIVITIES	X						X
63-1-8054	UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	X						
63-1-8055	COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM PROCESSING SUPPORT	X						
63-1-8056	PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SUPPORT	X						
63-1-8057	COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT	X						
63-1-8058	COORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT	X						
63-1-8059	PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS	X						
63-1-8060	PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT	X						

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

Collective Tasks		63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-8061	PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	X						
63-1-8062	COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT	X						
63-1-8063	COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT	X						
63-1-8064	COORDINATE HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	X						
63-1-8065	COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT							X
63-1-8066	PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER							X
63-1-8067	PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT							X
63-1-8068	PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES							X
63-1-8069	PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES							X
63-1-8070	COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES							X

Collective Tasks	63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-8071 DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES	X						
Mobility and Survivability							
63-1-4038 SUPERVISE OPERATIONS SECURITY PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4040 SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)				X		X	
Combat Service Support							
63-1-4024 PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4025 COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4026 COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4027 COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4028 COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4029 COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

Collective Tasks	63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-4030 COORDINATE CLASS I, VI, AND WATER SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4031 COORDINATE COMBAT HEALTH SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4033 COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4034 COORDINATE FIELD SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4035 ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4036 COORDINATE SUPPORT FOR REGENERATION ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)					X		

Collective Tasks	63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-4037 OPERATE THE TACTICAL AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)			X	X	X		
63-1-4042 PROVIDE PERSONNEL SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4043 PROVIDE ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4044 CONDUCT COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)					X		
63-1-4303 COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)		X	X	X	X	X	
63-1-4326 PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)		X	X	X	X	X	
Command and Control							
63-1-4001 CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4002 CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE REPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4003 FORMULATE FEASIBLE COURSES OF ACTION (DIGITIZED)		X					

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

Collective Tasks		63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-4004	DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4005	DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4006	DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4007	DEVELOP SUPPORT OPERATIONS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4008	DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S (OPERATIONS) ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4009	PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED)		X					
63-1-4010	DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)		X	X				
63-1-4011	DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)		X	X				
63-1-4012	PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)		X				X	

Collective Tasks	63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-4014 PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)		X				X	
63-1-4017 ESTABLISH COMMUNICATION (DIGITIZED)		X	X	X			
63-1-4022 OPERATE THE LOGISTICS SUPPORT AREA OF LOGISTICS OPERATION CENTER (DIGITIZED)				X	X		
63-1-4041 MAINTAIN COMMUNICATION (DIGITIZED)		X	X	X	X	X	
63-1-4045 PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)		X	X	X	X	X	
63-1-4050 OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)				X		X	
63-1-4052 DIRECT RESPONSE TO THREAT ACTIONS (DIGITIZED)						X	
63-1-4053 DIRECT AREA DAMAGE CONTROL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)						X	
63-1-8072 PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT	X						

Collective Tasks		63-2-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	63-2-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Attached Elements	63-2-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	63-2-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	63-2-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	63-2-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities	63-2-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station
63-1-8073	PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER	X						
63-1-8074	PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT							X

Figure 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission To Collective Tasks

Chapter 3

Training Plans

3-1. GENERAL. This chapter describes how to use the MTP to develop battalion-level training plans and provides a mission outline. It is designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for critical wartime missions. FM 25-100 and FM 25-101 provides detailed information on training management and should be used with the MTP for developing battalion training plans.

3-2. LONG-RANGE PLANNING. Long-range planning allows commanders to provide timely input to the Army's various training resource systems and provide a general direction for the training programs.

a. Develop the Unit METL. The first step in developing a METL is analyzing all specified and implied missions and other guidance. Next, the unit's wartime mission is restated. After analyzing the unit's missions and external directives, a list of tasks is identified which must be accomplished if the unit is to successfully accomplish its wartime mission. Subordinate commanders and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. The task list is developed using the missions contained in Chapter 2 of the MTP, missions assigned to the battalion by contingency plans and missions-directed by division commander's guidance. The commander reviews the task list and selects tasks that are essential to the unit's wartime mission. The selected tasks are forwarded to division headquarters. The final approved task list becomes the unit's METL, Figure 3-1.

- (1) INTELLIGENCE.**
 - 1. Provide Intelligence Support

- (2) MANEUVER.**
 - 1. Direct Deployment Alert Activities
 - 2. Establish the Emergency Operations Center
 - 3. Operate the Emergency Operations Center
 - 4. Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities
 - 5. Update Movement Plan/Order
 - 6. Coordinate POM Processing Support
 - 7. Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Services Support
 - 8. Coordinate Family Assistance Support
 - 9. Coordinate Deployment Training

Figure 3-1. Example Battalion METL

<p>(3) MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Supervise Operations Security Program2. Supervise NBC Defense Operations
<p>(4) COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Coordinate Class V Support2. Coordinate Class III Support3. Coordinate Maintenance Support4. Coordinate Class II, IV, VII and IX Support5. Coordinate Class I, VI, and Water Support6. Coordinate Combat Health Services Support7. Coordinate Field Services Support8. Prepare Continuity of Operations Plan
<p>(5) COMMAND AND CONTROL.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Conduct Mission Analysis2. Maintain Current Estimate of the Situation3. Prepare Battalion OPLAN/OPORD4. Maintain Communications

Figure 3-1. Example Battalion METL (Continued)

b. Establish training objectives. After the METL is identified, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, STP, division headquarters guidance and local SOP.

c. Conduct Training Assessment. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Need Practice), "U" (Untrained), or "?" (Unknown). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements, Figure 3-2.

	CURRENT TRAINING STATUS BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS							
	I N T E L	M A N U V E R	F I R E S P T	M O B & S U R V	A I R D E F	C S S	C M D & C T R L	
MISION ESSENTIAL TASK								
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	T	P	P	T	P	T	?	
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	P	P	P	P	P	P	P	
Plan Rear Operations	T	P	T	T	?	T	P	
Coordinate Class V Support	P	?	P	?	?	?	P	
Legend	T - Trained			U - Untrained				
	P - Need Practice			? - Status Unknown				

Figure 3-2. Sample Commander's Training Assessment

d. Develop Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance. The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission essential will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must:

- (1) Review higher echelon commander's goals.
- (2) Spell in real-world terms, what the battalion will do to comply with the goals of higher echelon commanders.
- (3) List in broad terms his own goals for the unit. Figure 3-3 provides a sample of battalion goals.

e. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task and the relative training emphasis the task should receive. Figure 3-4 provides a sample training priority list.

Attain and sustain proficiency in all MTP missions.
Maintaining a 90 percent OR rate.
Attain and sustain 100 percent individual and crew-served weapons qualifications.
Support brigade offensive operations.

Figure 3-3. Example Battalion Goals

TASK	SOURCE	TRAINING PRIORITY
Coordinate Support for Regeneration Activities	MTP	3
Provide Command and Control	MTP	1
Conduct Mission Analysis	MTP	4
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	MTP	2
Plan Rear Operations	MTP	5

Figure 3-4. Example Training Priority List

f. Prepare Long-Range Training Calendars. The long-range training calendar is the coordinating tool for long-range planning. It is structured by long-range events to identify time periods available for training mission essential tasks. The long-range planning calendar projects the training events and activities of the battalion training program for the upcoming 12 to 24 months. To prepare a long-range calendar, follow the steps outlined below:

- (1) Select training events and activities to train the missions. The battalion commander must project events that will enable him to achieve his goals.

(2) Assign time for subordinate units to train. Subordinate leaders must be allowed to develop their training programs in support of the battalion training program.

(3) Examine various training alternatives to make optimum use of the training support available to the unit. Available training resources must be compared against division directed training, DISCOM directed training events, and subordinate level projected training events. Resourcing tools available to the battalion commander are CATS, OPTEMPO, and STRAC.

(4) Obtain approval of long-range plans from DISCOM headquarters.

(5) Issue Guidance. Training guidance is issued to the staff and subordinate units with the long-range training calendar. This training guidance supplements the long-range training calendar and generally includes:

- (a) Training policies.
- (b) Types of mandatory training.
- (c) Training resource guidance.
- (d) Quotas for centralized training (schools).
- (e) Training goals.

3-3. SHORT-RANGE PLANNING. A short-range plan is prepared to address the immediate future (3 months). Short-range planning develops specific training objectives based on goals and guidance prepared during long-range planning. The short-range plan adds more detail and may modify the long-range plan based on current assessments. Prepare the short-range plan as described below:

a. Review the training program, current unit proficiency, resources, and training environment.

(1) Review the training program described in the long-range planning process. This review determines if assessments made during long-range planning are still valid.

(2) Review previous short-range planning calendars for training accomplished, training preempted and lesson learned.

(3) Review current unit proficiency to update priorities.

(4) Review resources to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

(5) Review training environment again in this phase of planning because it takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are:

- (a) Personnel assigned.
- (b) Personnel turbulence.
- (c) Morale.
- (d) Education programs.
- (e) Mandatory training.
- (f) Visits, inspections, and tests.
- (g) Supplies and equipment.
- (h) Nonmission-related activities.
- (i) Other programs.

b. Develop a detailed plan of action for short-range training plans. Prepare the detailed plan of action as described below:

(1) Examine events scheduled on the long-range training plan to determine if they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a short-range training planning calendar.

(3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events.

(4) Analyze missions to determine related individual, leader, and collective tasks.

(5) Determine if there are weaknesses. Select tasks to correct these identified weaknesses and to sustain selected individual, leader and unit strengths, as necessary.

(6) Select the specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 provide the commander with training objectives.

(7) Prepare a short-range training planning calendar or 3 monthly schedules. The short-range training planning calendar provides a detailed plan of actions for the specified period.

(8) Review short-range plans with higher and adjacent headquarters.

(9) Issue guidance. This guidance specifically addresses how training will be accomplished.

3-4. NEAR-TERM PLANNING. The final phase of planning is the execution of training. Using the short-range plan, prepare weekly training schedules.

a. Review the training program, unit proficiency, resources, and training environment. As in long-range and short-range planning, this review determines if previous assessments are valid.

b. Finalize plans based upon the review of the battalion's training program. Determine the best sequence for training tasks, and complete the final coordination of the training events and activities.

c. Prepare trainers, observer controllers (OCs), opposing force (OPFOR), and support personnel to know what is to be trained, why it is being trained and what their role in the training will be.

3-5. TRAINING THE BATTALION HEADQUARTERS. Planning training for battalion headquarters personnel provides the commander with unique challenges. The most severe challenges are those that have to do with the time and availability of personnel. The battalion staff and headquarters personnel are involved in day-to-day operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find time to adequately address the training needs of these elements. These elements must be capable of fulfill their role for the battalion to perform its wartime mission. The strategy selected by the commander for training these elements must include and effective method for training individuals, leaders, and units.

a. Training the battalion (Staff Training).

(1) Training of the staff presents the greatest challenges within a constrained training environment. This MTP identifies the training objectives for the battalion staff. The staff has numerous tasks to master to be effective. Examples of tasks that any staff must perform are:

- (a) Analyze terrain and threat information.
- (b) Function as an effective team.
- (c) Exchange information.
- (d) Prepare estimates of the situation.
- (e) Provide logistics and CHS Support input into the battalion OPORD.
- (f) Give appraisals.
- (g) Make recommendations and decision.
- (h) Prepare OPLANs.
- (i) Issue orders.
- (j) Coordinate and control unit operations.
- (k) Supervise subordinate units.

(2) The strategy used to train the staff will vary based on the considerations used in Planning training (levels of proficiency, training support available, etc.). FM 25-101 contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Some methods of staff training include the following exercises.

(a) TEWT. Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs) are low-cost, low overhead exercises conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. TEWTs are used by commanders to train subordinate leaders and staffs to analyze terrain and plan for the conduct of unit missions.

(b) MAPEX. Map exercises (MAPEX) are a low-overhead training exercise that allows commanders to train their staffs to perform essential integrating and control functions to support their decisions under wartime conditions. MAPEXs may be used to train the staff to exchange information, prepare estimates, give appraisals, make recommendations and decisions, prepare plans, and issue orders.

(c) CPX. Command post exercises (CPXs) are medium-cost, medium overhead training exercises that may be conducted in garrison or a field location. CPXs normally use battle simulations to drive the staff actions.

(d) FTX. Field training exercises (FTXs) are high-cost, high overhead exercises conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions. A unit-conducted FTX exercise the staff in coordination, control, and supervision of battalion operations. Unit-conducted FTXs provide the best opportunity for the staff to combine all of its skills and perform as they would in wartime, responding to both higher and lower levels.

(3) At battalion level, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, CPXs, CFXs, and combined arms live fire exercises (CALFEXs) to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also makes the optimum use of unit field training time. Each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

b. Training the Battalion. Training the battalion is a complex task requiring both unit and staff training programs. Normal day-to-day operations place a unique burden on the battalion commander to accomplish training. Elements cross staff lines and responsibilities. The battalion XO and CSM coordinate with the battalion and Headquarters and Headquarters Company (HHC) commanders to ensure individual soldiering tasks are being mastered.

3-6. DEVELOPMENT OF TRAINING EXERCISES. Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the battalion to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Since only a sample FTX is contained in the MTP, it is necessary for the battalion to develop exercises for its own use. The section provides general procedures for the battalion staff to use for FTX preparation and for the battalion supporting STXs. Exercise plans are normally prepared during preparation of the short-range plan. Prepare the exercises as described below:

a. Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan.

b. Site Selection. Confirm selection of a training area.

c. Scenario Development. After missions and tasks are selected, prepare detailed scenario for the exercise.

(1) List the missions and tasks in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These events would normally include issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistics action necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure that the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. Selection of OCs and OPFOR. OCs and OPFOR are normally required for every FTX and for STXs when MILES are used. It is difficult for a battalion headquarters to provide these from its own resources. When OCs and OPFOR must be provided from within the battalion, unit leaders may have to serve as the OCs for their units and the OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives. Ideally, the battalion should provide OCs and OPFOR.

e. Preparation of Control Plan. Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of training units, OPFOR, and OCs. The scenarios used and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan should consist of:

(1) Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.

(2) Detailed instructions for the OPFOR.

(3) Detailed schedule of activities for units.

(4) OPORDs and FRAGOs for friendly units. Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.

f. Preparation of the Evaluation Plan. All training is evaluated, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation will consist of:

(1) Specific instructions for OCs.

(2) A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each OC.

(3) Detailed time schedule for evaluation and AARs.

3-7. MISSION OUTLINE. The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime mission to FTXs and STXs. This outline should assist the commander and staff in the preparation of training plans. Figure 3-5 is a sample mission outline for the battalion.

**HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
MISSION OUTLINE**

**FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS**

STX 63-1-E0002 – Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	
DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8050
ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8051
OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8052
SUPERVISE BATTALION DEPLOYMENT/REDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8053
UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8054
COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM PROCESSING SUPPORT	63-1-8055
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SUPPORT	63-1-8056
COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT	63-1-8057
CORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT	63-1-8058
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS	63-1-8059
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT	63-1-8060
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8061
COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT	63-1-8062
COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8063
COORDINATE HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8064
DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8071
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT	63-1-8072
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER	63-1-8073

Figure 3-5. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion

FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS

STX 63-1-E0010 -- Plan Logistics Support or Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements	
CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4001
CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4002
FORMULATE FEASIBLE COURSES OF ACTION (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4003
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4004
DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4005
DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4006
DEVELOP SUPPORT OPERATIONS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4007
DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S (OPERATIONS) ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4008
PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4009
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4010
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4011
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4012
PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4014
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017
PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4024
SUPERVISE OPERATIONS SECURITY PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4038
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045
PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4051
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326

Figure 3-5. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (continued)

FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS

STX 63-1-E0005 -- Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4010
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4011
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015
ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST (FORWARD) (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4016
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017
COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4018
OPERATE TACTICAL SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326

Figure 3-5. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (continued)

FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS

STX 63-1-E0006 -- Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015
ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST (FORWARD) (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4016
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017
SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4019
ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4020
OPERATE THE SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4022
OPERATE THE TACTICAL AREA OF LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4040
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4050
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326

Figure 3-5. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (continued)

FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS

STX 63-1-E0011 – Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	
OPERATE LOGISTICS SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4022
COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4025
COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4026
COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4027
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4028
COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4029
COORDINATE CLASS I, VI AND WATER SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4030
COORDINATE COMBAT HEALTH SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4031
COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4033
COORDINATE FIELD SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4034
ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENTS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4035
COORDINATE SUPPORT FOR REGENERATION ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4036
OPERATE TACTICAL SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041
PROVIDE PERSONNEL SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4042
PROVIDE ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4043
CONDUCT COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4044
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326

Figure 3-5. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (continued)

FTX
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS

STX 63-1-E0008 -- Supervise Force Protection Activities	
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4012
PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4014
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4040
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4050
PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4051
DIRECT RESPONSE TO THREAT ACTIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4052
DIRECT AREA DAMAGE CONTROL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4053
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326

STX 63-1-E0009 -- Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015
SUPERVISE BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8053
COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8065
PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8066
PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8067
PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8068
PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8069
COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8070
PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8074

Figure 3-1. Mission Outline for the Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion (continued)

Chapter 4

Training Exercises

4-1. GENERAL. Training exercises are used to train and practice personnel in the performance of collective tasks. This MTP has two types of exercises: FTX and STX. These exercises assist the Aviation Support Battalion (ASB) commander in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. This chapter contains one FTX and seven STXs which are designed to provide a basic plan to achieve proficiency in the seven supporting missions identified for the ASB. Table 4-1 is a listing of the FTX and STX.

Table 4-1. List of Exercises		
Mission Number	Title	Page
FTX	Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements	4-4
63-1-E0002	Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations	4-17
63-1-E0010	Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements	4-23
63-1-E0005	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	4-30
63-1-E0006	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	4-37
63-1-E0011	Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	4-44
63-1-E0008	Supervise Force Protection Activities	4-53
63-1-E0009	Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station	4-61

4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the ASB to train its personnel to perform its overall critical wartime mission. This FTX provides a logical sequence for the performance of tasks previously trained in the STXs. The overall critical wartime mission provides the FTX orientation for ASB training. FTX should be conducted when the supported brigade is conducting an FTX.

4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE. The STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercise used to train a group of closely related and collective tasks. The commander based on local METT-TC and available personnel and equipment may modify the STX. The STX provides the information for training personnel to perform the missions that make up the overall critical wartime mission. The STX performs the following functions:

- a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.
- b. Allows training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the ASB to practice each supporting mission before the critical wartime mission.
- d. Saves time by providing a majority of information needed to develop a method for training.

4-4. SAFETY. During any training exercises, soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that all training is conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to each exercise, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures that are to be taken during execution.

4-5. VISUALIZATION.

a. Battle command is the art of battle decision making and leading. It includes controlling operations and motivating soldiers and their organizations into action to accomplish missions. Armed with the knowledge of the current state and the desired end state, commanders visualize those actions necessary to achieve the desired future state and then translate that visualization into action. It includes the following:

- Assigning missions.
- Prioritizing and allocating resources.
- Selecting the critical time and place to act.
- Knowing how and when to make adjustments during the fight.

b. Battlefield visualization is the mental process that supports the commander's decision making process and his ability to anticipate support requirements. Using a vision of proposed support of combat operations allows the commander to know when, and if a decision should be made. It is a continuous

process that commences with the receipt of a warning order and continues through the end of an operation.

c. Digital information systems have the capability of providing a clearer picture to the commander. Digital systems enhance the commander's ability to have an understanding of the current state of friendly and enemy forces. This extends beyond the knowledge of their physical location and includes environmental, readiness and human considerations. It includes the ability to see and understand the dynamic relationship between supporter and supported as the commander leads his subordinate elements through the sequence of events.

d. The available digital information systems enhance the commander's situational awareness by providing him with an unprecedented level of friendly and enemy information. Commanders must recognize that the common, relevant picture that is produced by a myriad of information systems represent both known and estimated information, and is possibly flawed by human input. The commander must tailor this information with his judgment, intuition and experience.

**BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPPORT AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY SQUADRON AND ATTACHED
ELEMENTS**

1. **Objective.** This FTX is designed to provide Aviation Support Battalion headquarters commander, staff and key leaders with training in their critical wartime mission: Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements. The headquarters must become proficient in the supervision of strategic deployment operations, supervision of the relocation of subordinate units and sustainment resources. The ASB must be proficient in the supervision of the establishment of subordinate elements and facilities, planning and providing logistics support for the Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and attached elements. The ASB must also be proficient in the supervision of force protection activities and the redeployment of subordinate elements to home station.

2. **Interface.**

a. This FTX supports the Division Support Command FTX - Support Division Tactical Operations.

b. Training the following battalion STXs supports this FTX:

(1) STX 63-1-E0002 Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations.

(2) STX 63-1-E0010 Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements.

(3) STX 63-1-E0005 Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources.

(4) STX 63-1-E0006 Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities.

(5) STX 63-1-E0011 Provide Direct Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements.

(6) STX 63-1-E0008 Supervise Force Protection Activities.

(7) STX 63-1-E0009 Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station.

- c. This FTX is supported by training in the following company FTX:
- (1) Provide Supply Support (Supply Company).
 - (2) Provide Ground Maintenance Support (Ground Maintenance Company).
 - (3) Provide Aviation Maintenance Support (Aviation Maintenance Company).

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrices in Chapter 2 show the collective tasks that must be mastered in order to perform ASB missions. Training that will improve ASB ability to perform its missions are:

(1) Providing command, control, situational awareness, and total asset visibility of distribution systems for organic and attached units. Planning, coordinating, establishing, and controlling direct and habitual combat service support to an Aviation Brigade, a divisional cavalry squadron and attached elements. Realistic training also includes security, internal logistics operations to include consolidated food service and field maintenance support for subordinate units and administration for units organic or attached to the ASB, maintaining situational awareness through the automated information management systems. These systems provide the unit with location/configuration total asset visibility (in-transit and area of operation) and overall connectivity to supported, adjacent units and higher headquarters, rear operations as assigned by the supported Aviation Brigade commander, primarily self-defense. It also includes planning, coordinating and training for mortuary affairs activities for the brigade area.

(2) These tasks from Chapter 5 are listed in Table 4-2. Aviation Brigade and the Cavalry Squadron are dependent on the ASB for logistics support. The ASB training cycle should be synchronized with those of units that habitually are supported. It is important that a habitual and closely coordinated annual training plan be developed and adhered to between supporter and supported. This training may be conducted in garrison and the local training area (LTA) by the following methods:

- (a) MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise.
- (b) TEWT.
- (c) Communications Exercise (COMEX)/Situational Awareness Exercise to practice battle command information procedures and

operations, and logistics support operations using Force XXI Battle Command, Brigade and Below (FBCB2), Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS), Movement Tracking System (MTS) and other battlefield functional area control systems (BFACS) and logistics standard army management information systems (STAMIS). The ASB should practice continuity of operations (COOP) techniques and procedures in order to develop manual procedures for use in the event of automation failure or disruption due to enemy action.

(3) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by the following activities:

(a) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness program. Such activity should be conducted with members of the supported Aviation Brigade whenever possible.

(b) Leader or individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films (logistics, cavalry and aviation) that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of ASB heritage and that of the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron.

(e) Partnership activity and training exchange programs between and among members of the ASB and the supported units. For example, the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron have the expertise to teach combat related skills to members of the ASB. The ASB, in turn, has the capability to teach logistics related skills to members of those units. Such activity will foster the mutual respect and trust needed on future non-linear battlefields.

b. The ASB training cycle should be synchronized with those of the units that the ASB habitually supports. It is important that a habitual and closely coordinated annual training plan be developed and adhered to between supporting and supported units.

c. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends after restoration of the ASB to home station. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general sequence of task performances in this exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario.

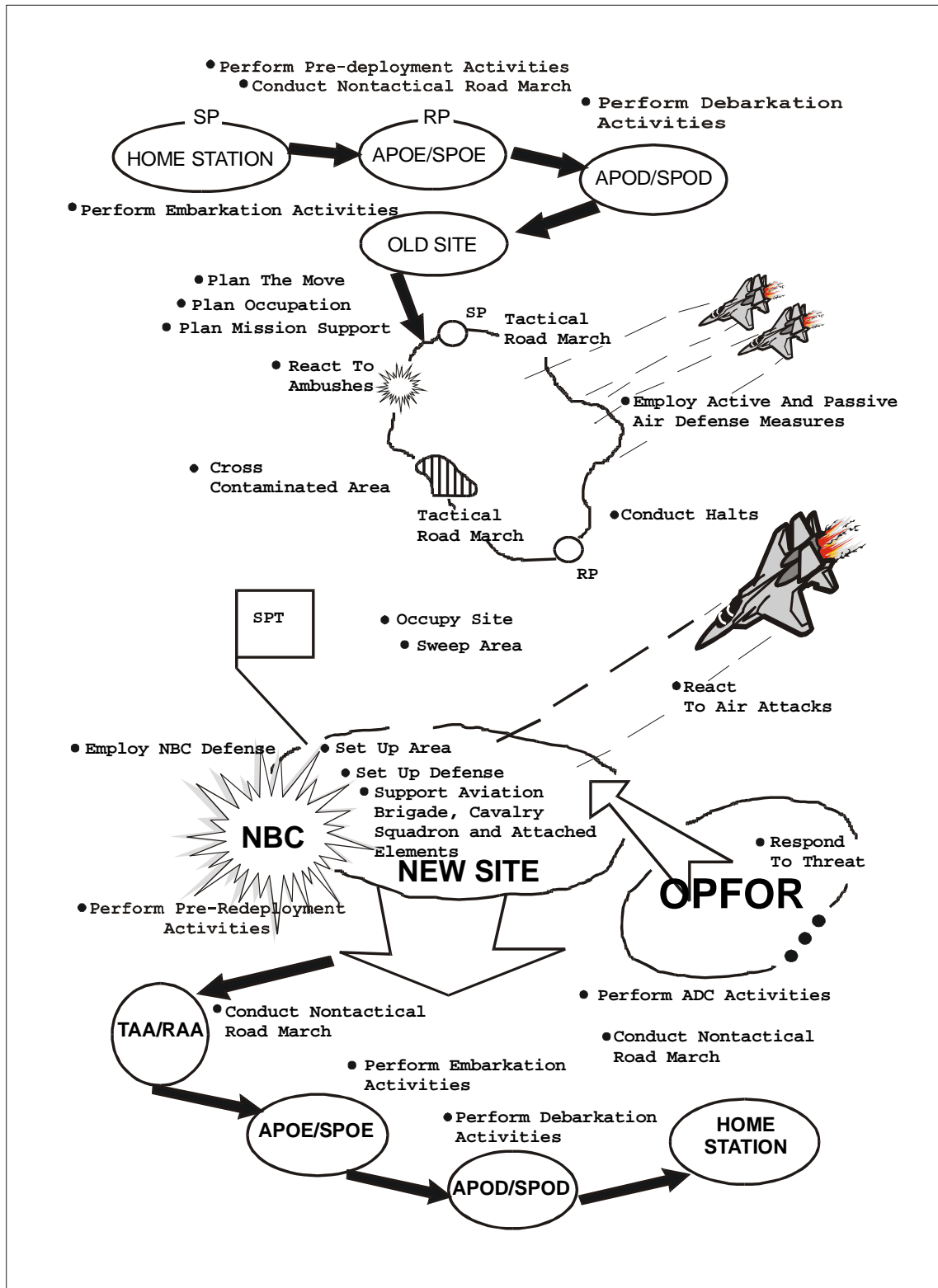


Figure 4-1. General Scenario Illustration

**Table 4-2. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion FTX ,
Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements**

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
1.	Receive Warning Order	10 min
2.	Direct Deployment Alert Activities	10 min
3.	Establish the Emergency Operations Center	2 hrs
4.	Operate the Emergency Operations Center	10 hrs
5.	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hrs
6.	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Support	3 hrs
7.	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	4 hrs
8.	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	2 hrs
9.	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	2 hrs
10.	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	2 hrs
11.	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	8 hrs
12.	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13.	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hrs
14.	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs
15.	Coordinate Relocation of Subordinate Elements	3 hrs
16.	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements	4 hrs
17.	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	4 hrs
18.	AAR	1 hr
19.	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hrs
20.	Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward)	2 hrs
21.	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
22.	Supervised Road March	1 hr
23.	Threat Interdictions	40 min
24.	Cross Release Points	10 min
25.	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements And Battalion HQ	6 hrs
26.	AAR	1 hr
27.	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
28.	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr
29.	Prepare Operations Order/Plan and Annexes	1 hr
30.	AAR	1 hr

**Table 4-2. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion FTX,
Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements
(continued)**

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
31.	** Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements.	35 hrs
32.	Threat Interdictions	40 min
33.	AAR	1 hr
34.	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
35.	Defense Responses	30 min
36.	Damage Assessment	2 hrs
37.	Restoration of Support	2 hrs
38.	AAR	1 hr
39.	Receive Warning Order For Redeployment	10 min
40.	Coordinate Reconstitution for Deployment	2 hrs
41.	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
42.	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	2 hrs
43.	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hrs
44.	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	2 hrs
45.	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs
46.	Coordinate Home Station Activities	2 hrs
47.	AAR-Final	2 hrs
Total Time: 96 hrs		
NOTE 1: Events will be performed to standard, not time limitation. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility or under mission oriented protective posture (MOPP) conditions.		
NOTE 3: Time must be added to this exercise (sleeping time, eating time, and travel time to and from the training area).		
*	Remains operational during the entire exercise.	
**	Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.	

c. This exercise may be conducted under several options. These options are not all- inclusive, and can be exercised in various combinations.

(1) Conditional options, in support of:

- (a) Offensive operations.
- (b) Defensive operations.
- (c) Retrograde operations.
- (d) Day or night operations.
- (e) Stability and support operations.
- (f) NBC environment.

(2) Operational options.

(a) Supervise force protection activities (develop base defense plan, plan battalion area tactical operations, and direct response to threat actions).

(b) Provide direct logistics support (establish the aviation support area and sustain the Aviation Brigade, ASB subordinate units and the Cavalry Squadron).

(c) Supervise force projection operations (supervise deployment, onward movement and redeployment of equipment and personnel).

4. General Situation.

a. The multifunctional ASB provides direct and habitual logistics support to the Aviation Brigade, subordinate elements and the Division Cavalry Squadron. The ASB commander is the Aviation Brigade commander's battle logistician. The headquarters staff is charged with supervision of strategic deployment of subordinate elements to new theaters of operations; relocation and establishment of subordinate elements and facilities in a new area; direct and habitual logistics support operations in support of the Aviation Brigade. It is also responsible for area logistics support to attached elements and the Cavalry Squadron, force protection activities and strategic redeployment of the ASB to home station. The Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron have been alerted for strategic deployment to a potentially hostile country. The HQ, ASB must deploy to provide command, control, communications and situational awareness to subordinate elements and supervise

direct and habitual logistics support to Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. ASB personnel will deploy by air and equipment will deploy by sea and air. OPFOR is capable of inflicting Levels I, II, and III attacks and employing weapons of mass destruction at sea and aerial ports of debarkation, staging and marshaling areas, and along main supply routes. HQ, ASB is prepared for OPFOR activity during reception, staging, onward movement and integration (RSO&I) operations, establishment of the Aviation Support Area (ASA) and during logistics support operations. HQ, Aviation Brigade or HQ DISCOM will provide guidance to the ASB when a level II/III threat is anticipated. Upon notification of a Level II/III attack, HQ, ASB will cease combat service support operations and supervise force protection activities within the battalion support area and battle hand over to military police units or a tactical combat force (TCF).

b. This exercise is conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The ASB will operate under threat of enemy assault by weapons of mass destruction, ground or air attack, indirect conventional fires, and electronic warfare.

c. The ASB should be prepared to move by "leapfrogging" while continuing to provide required direct logistics support to the Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and area logistics support to attached elements.

d. The ASB should be prepared to relocate at least every 48 hours.

5. Special Situation.

a. The Aviation Brigade Commander or DISCOM commander has issued the following warning order to ASB Battalion Commander:

"Be prepared to deploy the ASB OCONUS and establish subordinate elements and facilities at a new operating site to support Aviation Brigade, subordinate and attached units and the Cavalry Squadron combat operations. Be prepared to support Aviation Brigade, Division Cavalry Squadron and attached elements within ----- hours of arrival. Coordinate with Aviation Brigade Support Operations and S4 and Cavalry Squadron S4 on logistics requirements and with the S3s of both organizations for task organization."

b. ASB Battalion Commander issues the following instructions to his staff.

"We are being deployed to support the Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and attached elements in -----, vicinity -----, coordinates ----- and must be prepared to support Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron combat operations within ----- hours of arrival. Begin your planning process for deploying subordinate elements, relocating to our area of operations, establishing subordinate elements and facilities, providing direct and area logistics support, and conducting force protection activities. This exercise will begin with receipt of a warning order from me and end upon notification from me."

6. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainers/Evaluators.** The battalion commander, who will be the trainer and also the primary evaluator, will conduct this exercise. If possible, there should be an evaluator with each staff section and subordinate unit. At least one other evaluator is required with the OPFOR. Evaluators may be selected from the Headquarters, Aviation Brigade, and Division Support Command (DISCOM) or sister ASB organizations.

b. **Vehicles/Communications.** Analog and digital communications equipment is needed for controllers/evaluators and the primary trainer. Radios and digital means of communication are required for OPFOR vehicles during operations. Each controller/evaluator reports directly to the primary trainer.

c. **Opposing Force.** An OPFOR platoon (+) and one aircraft are required for the exercise for Level II/III threat activities. The OPFOR should be well trained in patrolling, assault, and guerrilla tactics. The OPFOR should have specific missions in the ASB area. Members of the Cavalry Squadron may perform in the role of OPFOR.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimensions of 6 by 20 kilometers. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. **Master Incident List (MIL).** During the FTX, items should be continually fed into proper channels. Input from the Aviation Brigade S4, subordinate and attached units, the Cavalry Squadron staff, and the DISCOM staff causes responses from the unit. A major purpose of this FTX is to drive unit and subordinate elements to a simulated combat level of support requirements. The appropriate system, MTS, analog, or digital, should serve as the primary vehicle to distribute items from the MIL.

f. Using Units. In order to perform certain phases of this exercise, elements of the Aviation Brigade, DISCOM staff, attached units, Cavalry Squadron, and subordinate units of the ASB must participate.

g. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion Headquarters support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit STX, and the requirements for the headquarters company when these elements participate.

7. **Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence.** Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs that are to be used by the OCs.

Table 4-3. T&EOs for evaluating this FTX, Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4001	5-171
CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE REPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4002	5-175
FORMULATE FEASIBLE COURSES OF ACTION (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4003	5-178
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4004	5-181
DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4005	5-185
DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4006	5-189
DEVELOP SUPPORT OPERATIONS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4007	5-193
DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S (OPERATIONS) ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4008	5-197
PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4009	5-202
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4010	5-207
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4011	5-213
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4012	5-217
PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4014	5-220
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015	5-10
ESTABLISH BATTALION POST (FORWARD) (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4016	5-14
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017	5-225

Table 4-3. T&EOs for evaluating this FTX, Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements (continued)		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE UNITS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4018	5-17
SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4019	5-20
ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4020	5-23
OPERATE LOGISTICS SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4022	5-229
PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4024	5-108
COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4025	5-111
COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4026	5-116
COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4027	5-121
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4028	5-127
COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4029	5-133
COORDINATE CLASS I, VI, AND WATER SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4030	5-136
COORDINATE COMBAT HEALTH SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4031	5-139
COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4033	5-142
COORDINATE FIELD SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4034	5-145
ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4035	5-148
COORDINATE SUPPORT FOR REGENERATION ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4036	5-151
OPERATE THE TACTICAL AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037	5-234
SUPERVISE OPERATIONS SECURITY PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4038	5-99
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4040	5-102
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE PERSONNEL SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4042	5-154

Table 4-3. T&EOs for evaluating this FTX, Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements (continued)		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PROVIDE ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4043	5-158
CONDUCT COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4044	5-162
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4050	5-246
PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4051	5-7
DIRECT RESPONSE TO THREAT ACTIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4052	5-249
DIRECT AREA DAMAGE CONTROL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4053	5-253
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326	5-168
DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8050	5-25
ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8051	5-27
OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8052	5-29
SUPERVISE BATTALION	63-1-8053	5-32
DEPLOYMENT/REDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES		
UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8054	5-36
COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM	63-1-8055	5-39
PROCESSING SUPPORT		
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SUPPORT	63-1-8056	5-42
COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT	63-1-8057	5-46
COORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT	63-1-8058	5-49
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS	63-1-8059	5-51
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT	63-1-8060	5-55
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8061	5-60
COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT	63-1-8062	5-63
COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8063	5-66
COORDINATE HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8064	5-69
COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8065	5-72

Table 4-3. T&EOs for evaluating this FTX, Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements (continued)		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8066	5-75
PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8067	5-78
PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8068	5-83
PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8069	5-86
COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8070	5-89
DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8071	5-93
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT	63-1-8072	5-96
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER	63-1-8073	5-256
PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8074	5-259

**BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE DEPLOYMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS TO NEW
THEATER OF OPERATIONS
STX 63-1-E0002**

1. Objective. This STX trains the ASB staff and key leaders in supervising the deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations. This STX also provides the commander and key leaders and staff with practice in planning, controlling and coordinating subordinate unit deployment activities. The unit must become proficient in planning and preparing subordinate units for force projection operations.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STX - Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to New Theater of Operations.

c. This STX can be used to plan and implement the deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations as part of a Command Post Exercise (CPX) or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX is supported by company-level STX - Deploy Unit to a New Theater of Operation.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment (land, sea, or air) of the ASB as a part of an FTX or CPX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, 63-2-2, 63-23-2, and 100-17; and ARs 220-10, 700-84 and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, Command Field Exercises (CFX), and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders. STXs support such exercises.

(5) Simulations and games are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They are also used to exercise command, control and situational awareness at various command and staff levels.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing deployment operations.

(b) Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where deployment activities will take place.

(c) Leaders should review the ASB, Aviation Brigade, and DISCOM deployment SOPs.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-4, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Various unit category levels.

(c) Different modes of transportation.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdiction.

(e) With or without NBC conditions.

(f) Day or night.

(g) Deployment using single or multiple modes of transportation.

(2) The ASB must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP of planning and executing deployment activities before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The commander, in coordination with HQ, DISCOM or Aviation Brigade, secures deployment guidance/orders, pertinent plans/SOPs and reviews deployment contingency plans.

b. Subordinate unit commanders update unit deployment plans in coordination with HQ, ASB, and installation support elements.

c. The Aviation Brigade HQ or DISCOM S2/S3 provides the ASB with the deployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the senior OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with the receipt of a deployment warning order and ends when the ASB is established in the theater of operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-4. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-4. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0002, Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to a New Theater of Operations

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
1.	Receive Warning Order	10 min
2.	Direct Deployment Alert Activities	10 min
3.	Establish the Emergency Operations Center	2 hrs
4.	Operate the Emergency Operations Center	10 hrs
5.	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hrs
6.	Coordinate Preparation for Overseas Movement Processing Support	2 hrs
7.	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	2 hrs
8.	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	1 hr
9.	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	1 hr
10.	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	1 hr
11.	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	2 hrs
12.	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr

Table 4-4. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0002, Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to a New Theater of Operations (continued)

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
13.	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hrs
14.	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs
15.	Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	2 hrs
16.	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	4 hrs
17.	AAR	1 hr
Total Time: 37 hrs 20 min		
<p>Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</p> <p>Some events are accomplished concurrently while others occur in sequence.</p>		

5. General Situation.

- a. The ASB is currently deployed at its home station. The ASB is under the command and control of HQ, DISCOM.
- b. Unit commanders provide personnel and equipment status reports.
- c. The installation provides required deployment support.
- d. APODs, SPODs and the OCONUS location are identified.

6. FRAGO. The commander issues the following FRAGO:

"We have been alerted to deploy OCONUS to support the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. New OCONUS location is vicinity -----, grid coordinates-----. Begin your planning process to prepare the ASB for deployment. Be prepared to deploy within ----- hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this STX."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or battalion XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating the details of deployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate the accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations and the thoroughness of coordination.

b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR is not required for this situational training exercise.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to facilities, equipment, and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB is used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and digital communications for the OCs are used. The senior trainer/OC requires communications to provide input from the MIL.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area for setting up operations, which is 6 by 20 kilometers. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During this STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive ASB actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion HQ requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit STX, and the requirements for the headquarters company when these elements participate in the exercise.

8. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-5. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0002, Supervise Deployment of Subordinate Elements to a New Theater of Operations		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8050	5-25
ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8051	5-27
OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-8052	5-29
SUPERVISE BATTALION DEPLOYMENT/ REDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8053	5-32
UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8054	5-36
COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM PROCESSING SUPPORT	63-1-8055	5-39
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SUPPORT	63-1-8056	5-42
COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT	63-1-8057	5-46
CORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT	63-1-8058	5-49
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS	63-1-8059	5-51
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT	63-1-8060	5-55
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8061	5-60
COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT	63-1-8062	5-63
COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8063	5-66
COORDINATE HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8064	5-69
DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8071	5-93
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT	63-1-8072	5-96
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER	63-1-8073	5-256

HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
PLAN LOGISTICS SUPPORT FOR AVIATION BRIGADE, CAVALRY
SQUADRON AND ATTACHED ELEMENTS
STX 63-1-E0010

1. Objective. This STX trains the ASB staff and other key members to develop operational plans in support of Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron combat operations. The staff must become proficient in analyzing the mission; developing intelligence, personnel, logistics, support operations estimate, and the operation's (commander's) estimate; and developing the OPLAN/OPORD. The staff must be able to successfully plan the relocation and establishment of subordinate elements and facilities in a new area and ASB force protection activities. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and preparing those operational plans necessary to provide combat service support for various types of combat operations.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements.

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STXs - Plan Logistics and Combat Health Services Support Operations and Manage Distribution Systems.

c. This STX can be used as a CPX to develop plans.

d. This STX has no corresponding STX at company level.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used as part of a CPX or FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 1-500, 63-2-2, 63-23-2, 100-10, 101-5-1, 101-5 should be discussed, and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when selected STXs are used. A CPX facilitates communications set up, practice of ASB TSOP, and staff coordinating procedures.

(4) Situational Awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the real time capability of Battlefield Functional Area Control System architecture. CSSCS supports the decision making process with course of action (COA) analysis. The staff can analyze up to three COAs for a 5-day period. Variables include combat posture, ASB task organization, miles traveled and geographical region.

(5) Simulations and games developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. A MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise. A map of the actual area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain should be used, if possible.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for preparing plans and orders.

(b) The ASB TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where movement and establishment will be performed.

(d) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the CSSCS database of unit personnel and equipment authorizations and unit and equipment planning factors. Leaders should familiarize themselves with the Baseline Resource Item List (BRIL) and techniques to determine critical items for inclusion into the Commander's Tracked Items List (CTIL).

(e) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted of the training area where the plan will be carried out, if possible.

(f) The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (ASB Commander or Executive Officer (XO)) with this STX are: conduct mission analysis, restate the mission, issue planning guidance, supervise staff coordination, analyze staff estimates, prepare commander's estimate, and approve plans/orders.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-6, this STX can be trained under several options

(a) Offensive operations.

- (b) With or without OPFOR interdictions.
- (c) With or without NBC environment.
- (d) Defensive operations.
- (e) Retrograde operations.
- (f) Support and stability operations.

(2) The ASB must become proficient in establishing and maintaining situational awareness, working as a staff to develop completed staff products, and using CSSCS to plan and manage logistics support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and attached elements before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The senior trainer completes the mission analysis and issues guidance based on supported/higher commander's guidance or based upon his own judgment. The senior trainer should make maximum use of Battlefield Functional Area Control Systems.

b. Staff estimates and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. The ASB should be able to relocate at least once every 48 hours.

e. The ASB S2/S3 should complete the OPLAN/OPORD and provide a hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

5. General Situation.

a. The ASB is deployed in a combat zone. The ASB mission is to provide direct and habitual logistics support for the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron and area logistics support to attached elements. The ASB commander has received

a warning order from the DISCOM or Aviation Brigade Commander with a task organization list of supported units.

b. The brigade commander’s planning guidance and restated mission guidance have been reviewed. The ASB commander has provided his planning guidance. The brigade commander’s estimate has been received and is used as a basis for the development of the operations estimate.

c. This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends when OPORD/OPLAN is prepared. AARs are conducted after completion of staff estimates, after a course of action is selected, and after OPORD/OPLAN briefing. Table 4-6 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-6. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0010, Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements			
<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>	
1.	Conduct Mission Analysis	3 hrs	
2.	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr	
3.	AAR	1 hr	
4.	Select Courses of Action	1 hr	
5.	AAR	1 hr	
6.	Preparation of OPLAN/OPORD	2 hrs	
7.	Briefing of OPLAN/OPORD	1 hr	
8.	Approval of OPLAN/ORORD		10 min
9.	AAR	1 hr	
10.	Preparation of Annexes	1 hr	
11.	Approval of Annexes		10 min
12.	AAR	1 hr	
Total Time: 13 hrs 20 min			
NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.			

d. Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available for planning.

e. The new area of operations may be a field or military operations in urban terrain (MOUT) environment.

f. A listing of task force organization has been secured and is the basis for projected logistics requirements.

g. The defense of subordinate elements and facilities will be based on a base cluster concept. The OPFOR has the potential to employ tactical air, indirect conventional fires, weapons of mass destruction, airborne, and airmobile regular and irregular army units.

h. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions, including Level I threat and NBC attack.

6. Special Situation.

a. The ASB Commander is conducting a staff meeting with his key staff members and unit commanders:

"The Aviation Brigade anticipates conducting an ----- operation within --- hours. The Cavalry Squadron will conducting ----- operations to support the division commander's intent. Operations are estimated to last approximately --- hours and will commence in the vicinity of -----; the final objective is-----. Our job is to provide direct logistics support to Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron and area logistics support to attached elements."

b. The ASB commander issues the following instructions:

"Begin your planning process for developing plans for this mission. I want a seamless and synchronized flow of materiel and other sustainment resources from echelons above brigade to companies and cavalry troops with a minimum of double handling of cargo or customer wait time. I want ground and aviation maintenance managers to strictly supervise repair cycle time on all items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. Make maximum use of throughput and transload operations down to the HSC, AMC, and GMC or customer level. CSSCS and FBCB2 give us an unprecedented ability to analyze courses of action, see the battlefield as it unfolds, and anticipate and project requirements, and not just react to them. Movement tracking capability allows us to support the throughput of sustainment resources with precision down to unit level logistics release point or weapons systems level. I want systems in place to establish and maintain asset and in transit visibility of materiel in the distribution system to enable rapid direct, redirect, cross leveling or massing of logistics support at critical points in the Aviation Brigade or Cavalry Squadron area of responsibility."

Further information will be disseminated as courses of action are selected; after OPLAN/OPORD briefing, and after the approval of annexes. If necessary, repeat any portion of the exercise until your performance is satisfactory."

7. Support Requirements.

a. **Minimum Trainer/OCs.** This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating staff estimates, a minimum of one trainer/OCs per staff section is required. The trainers/evaluators monitor and evaluate the accuracy of the estimates, the soundness of recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

b. **Opposing Force:**

(1) OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the ASB.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB are used. When an OPFOR is employed, a vehicle, radio and FBCB2 communications are needed for the OCs.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Not required when this STX is used as a CPX.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive ASB actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Battalion HQ requirements can be calculated by adding the sum requirements for each subordinate unit participating in the exercise.

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-7. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0010,
Plan Logistics Support for Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and
Attached Elements**

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAG E
CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4001	5-171
CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD	63-1-4002	5-175
FORMULATE FEASIBLE COURSES OF ACTION (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4003	5-178
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4004	5-181
DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4005	5-185
DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4006	5-189
DEVELOP SUPPORT OPERATIONS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4007	5-193
DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S (OPERATIONS) ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4008	5-197
PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4009	5-202
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4010	5-207
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4011	5-213
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4012	5-217
PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4014	5-220
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017	5-225
PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4024	5-108
SUPERVISE OPERATIONS SECURITY PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4038	5-99
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4051	5-7
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326	5-168

HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE RELOCATION OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND
SUSTAINMENT RESOURCES
STX 63-1-E0005

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the ASB commander, staff and other key leaders in planning and coordinating the relocation of subordinate elements and sustainment resources. The staff must become proficient in selecting routes, directing reconnaissance/quartering/advance party operations, coordinating required support for the move, monitoring the movement of subordinate units, and coordinating logistics for the Aviation Brigade, attached elements and Cavalry Squadron while moving. This STX combines the elements of column formations, movement control, situational awareness, communications and defense procedures necessary to accomplish relocation to a new operating site.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements.

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STX - Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources.

c. The STX can be used to plan and implement movement of the ASB and subordinate elements and facilities as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX is supported by company-level STX - Relocate Unit to a New Operating Site.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) During classroom activities, the use of FMs 1-111, 55-30, 63-23-2, 63-2-2, 101-5, 101-5-1, and the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(2) Leaders should use a map of the actual area where the STX is to be conducted, and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible. MAPEX assist in terrain analysis, route selection, and selection of operating areas.

(3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STX is used.

(4) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(5) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout the movement process using the real time on the move capability of FBCB2 systems.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement and preparing movement annexes/orders (FMs 55-30 and 101-5).

(b) The ASB, Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where movement and establishment will be performed.

(d) The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (ASB Commander or XO) with this STX are: analyze brigade and squadron missions, provide planning guidance, establish priorities for relocation, approve movement order/annex and supervise activities of staff section.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-8 and leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(d) Elements moving over a single or multiple routes.

(e) Movement by road or cross-country.

(2) The staff must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP for establishing and maintaining situational awareness during movement, and in the basics of planning and coordinating, and controlling the relocation of subordinate elements and facilities before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4) When using an OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainers must set out specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress on the ASB. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of a FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The commander determines movement priorities based upon the supported Aviation Brigade or DISCOM commander's guidance, type of operations or based upon his own judgment. Maximum use of digital communications should be adhered to. The enemy operations are based upon his own judgment. Input from the Cavalry Squadron and Aviation Brigade should be incorporated into the movement plan. The enemy situation will affect the security requirements.

b. The staff sections plan the move, and prepare the movement order/annex. The ASB S2/3 Section leads this task with input from other staff sections.

c. Staff recommendations are provided in hard copy to the ASB S2/3 for evaluation.

d. All reports should be submitted in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. The ASB should be able to relocate at least 48 hours as a standard capability.

f. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used in the AAR:

(1) Did the movement plan conform to the commander's guidance? Did the staff properly react to all deviations from the movement order?

(2) Did the subordinate units implement the movement plan properly? Did the OPFOR cause the desired reaction or enhance training?

g. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory but the unit execution is poor, then, more frequent moves during FTX or company-level STX are required.

h. This exercise begins with the assignment of responsibility for the movement annex and ends when the last subordinate unit has crossed the RP. AARs are conducted after preparation of the movement annex and after all units cross RP. Table 4-8 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0005, Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>	
1.	Select New Area	2 hrs	
2.	Coordinate Route Recon(s)	1 hr	30 min
3.	Staff Input	1 hr	
4.	Prepare Movement Annex	1 hr	
5.	AAR	1 hr	
6.	Implement Annex	1 hr	
7.	Coordinate Road March(es)	1 hr	
8.	OPFOR Activity	1 hr	
9.	AAR	1 hr	
10.	Cross RP		10 min
11.	AAR	1 hr	

Total Time: 11 hrs 40 min

* Events performed simultaneously.

NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time needed to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.

5. General Situation.

a. The ASB is deployed in a combat zone. The ASB mission is to provide direct logistics support to an Aviation Brigade, cavalry squadron and subordinate elements of the ASB. After receiving guidance from the Aviation Brigade

Commander or DISCOM Commander, the supported ASB commander has decided to relocate subordinate elements and facilities to a new operating area.

- b. Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available.
- c. Route reconnaissance is performed by the subordinate units.
- d. The OPFOR is capable of launching air attacks, ground attacks, indirect conventional fires, employing weapon of mass destruction and engaging in electronic warfare.
- e. Major deviations from the movement annex occur.
- f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO.

a. The ASB Commander is conducting a staff meeting. The following guidance is given to the staff:

"The ASB will relocate subordinate elements and sustainment resources to the vicinity of -----, coordinates -----. The ASB must cross the SP NLT-----. Conduct route reconnaissance, select routes, organize units for move, and prepare movement annex/order, to be published, NLT -----. Plan to arrive at new location NLT -----. We must be responsive to Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron requirements even during convoy operations. Maintain voice and digital communications with Aviation Maintenance Company, Supply Company, Ground Maintenance Company, Aviation Brigade S3 and S4, Cavalry Squadron S3 and S4 and DISCOM S3 and Support Operations Office. Be prepared to provide direct and area logistics to support the relocation of Aviation Brigade and Cavalry units. S3, you have the lead. The enemy has the capability to interdict our unit convoys and serials along the entire main supply route. Maintain march discipline and proper distance between unit convoys and serials. Use FBCB2 and MTS to maintain situational awareness and to control movement throughout the relocation. Have all units be prepared for immediate action drill in case of ambush, and to report to me using digital communications enemy activity or any other activity that impedes the progress of the battalion. Uniform for all subordinate and attached units is MOPP2. DISCOM S2/3 states contaminated area on current route of march vicinity -----. Reroute units at checkpoint ----- to the alternate MSR and have them report in upon closure at the new location."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the commander as the trainer and primary OC.

b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than platoon size with crew-served weapons.

(2) OPFOR should be well trained in threat tactics, have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) The MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the ASB.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and digital communications are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area that is 6 by 20 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive ASB actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion HQ support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-9 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-9. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0005, Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4010	5-207
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4011	5-213
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015	5-10
ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST (FORWARD)	63-1-4016	5-14
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017	5-225
COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS	63-1-4018	5-17
OPERATE TACTICAL SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037	5-234
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326	5-168

**BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND
FACILITIES
STX 63-1-E0006**

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the ASB commander, staff and other key leaders with practice in planning, coordinating, and supervising the establishment of subordinate elements and facilities in support of the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. The staff must become proficient in planning the occupation of the new area, coordinating advance/quartering party activities, supervising the establishment of subordinate elements and facilities, establishing and maintaining communications and force protection activities. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and supervising necessary functions to occupy a new area.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements.

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STX - Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities.

c. This STX can be used to plan and implement the establishment of the ASA and other facilities as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX is supported by company-level STX - Establish Unit Area of Operations.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 63-2-2, 63-23-2, and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(2) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the STX area is used. Leaders should use a map of the actual area where the STX

is to be conducted, and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible. MAPEX assist in terrain analysis and selection of operating areas.

(3) Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command, control and situational awareness at various command and staff levels.

(4) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the real time capability of Battlefield Functional Area Control System architecture.

(5) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the doctrinal procedures for planning and executing establishment of the ASA and other support facilities.

(b) The ASB, Aviation Brigade, and Cavalry Squadron TSOP should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area that the establishment of the ASA will be performed.

(d) The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (ASB Commander or XO) with this STX are analyzing supported brigade and squadron missions, providing planning guidance, approving ASB layout plan and base cluster defense plan, and supervising the activities of the staff.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB demonstrates proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-10 and the leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(d) Day or night.

(2) The staff must become proficient in the basics of planning and supervising the establishment of subordinate elements and facilities before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4) When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/ controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress on the ASB. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of a FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The ASB commander provides planning guidance based upon the Aviation Brigade commander's guidance or based upon his or her own judgment. Maximum use of digital communications should be adhered to. The type of operations determines the degree of site permanency that will be accomplished. The enemy situation will affect force protection requirements. The unit must be prepared at any time to defend against air, ground, or terrorist attacks during daylight or darkness, and to respond appropriately to enemy or friendly NBC operations.

b. The staff sections develop layout plans and supervise its implementation. The S2/3 is the proponent for this supporting mission with input from other staff sections. He establishes the new operating site IAW the ASB, DISCOM, and Aviation Brigade Commander's operational plans. When the site is operational, the Aviation Brigade, DISCOM and Cavalry Squadron S2/S3s are notified that the ASB is prepared to perform its operational mission.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1) Did the occupation plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2) Did the subordinate units implement the occupation plan properly?

e. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit weaknesses. If the plan is

satisfactory but the unit execution is poor, then, more frequent establishments during FTX or company-level STX are required.

f. This exercise begins when the ASB advance/quartering party arrives at the new site and ends when the ASA is established. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-10. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-10. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0006, Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities		
<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
1.	Occupy New Area of Operations	1 hr
2.	Formulate Tentative Layout Plan	1 hr
3.	AAR	1 hr
4.	Set Up the LOC	2 hrs
5.	Set Up Administrative and Bivouac Areas	2 hrs
6.	Supervise Establish of ASA	2 hrs
7.	AAR	1 hr
Total Time: 10 hrs		
NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the battalion staff.		

5. General Situation.

a. The ASB is deployed in a combat zone. The ASB mission is to provide direct and area logistics support to the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron.

b. Maps of the new area of operations (AO) and an NBC vulnerability analysis are available.

c. The new AO may be in a field or MOUT environment.

d. The ASB advance/quartering party has arrived at the new AO.

e. Subordinate units have arrived at the new AO and are ready to establish operations in support of offensive, defensive, or static operations. Subordinate units are prepared to defend at any time during the establishment.

f. The location of the TOC/ALOC has been identified.

- g. The communications plan is available.

6. FRAGO.

- a. The ASB commander is conducting a staff meeting. The following guidance is given:

"We will support Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron from our current location for the next 2 days. The enemy is capable of mounting aerial and ground attacks throughout the division rear areas and is also capable of bringing indirect fire upon us. Be prepared to push Class III and V to Attack Battalions and the CAV as of right now. I want the Logistics Operations Center set up and operational immediately followed by administrative and bivouac areas. Get voice and digital comms links in quickly with HQ, DISCOM, HQ Aviation Brigade, HQ, Cavalry Squadron, Aviation Maintenance Company, Ground Maintenance Company and Supply Company. Support Operations, begin locking, loading, and linking the locations of Attack Battalion and Cavalry Squadron support areas and logistics release points for all supported units down to company or troop level. Have all subordinate and attached units use cover and concealment to mask our activities and strict enforcement of light and noise discipline. Have them place LPs and OPs far enough out to give adequate warning. Uniform remains MOPP2 for all assigned and attached personnel based on reports of enemy threat activities."

- b. The ASB commander issues the following instructions.

"Now begin your planning process for establishing subordinate elements and facilities. Keep in mind that we are still required to support Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron even as we establish ourselves. Plan accordingly and maintain digital communications with supported units. This exercise ends when you have established the ASB ASA. You should conduct AAR once the plan is completed and after the area is prepared to support combat operations. If necessary, the exercise will be run again, until I am satisfied with the staff's performance."

7. Support Requirements.

- a. Minimum Trainer/Evaluators. This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the battalion headquarters staff, then one per staff section is required. If the STX is conducted as part of a battalion FTX, the required evaluators should be the sum of evaluators of each subordinate unit STX.

b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a STX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of a battalion FTX.

(2) OPFOR should be well trained in threat tactics, have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) The MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the ASB.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and communications are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size to support the number of vehicles and equipment in a tentative battalion AO is required. Vehicle should be spaced a minimum of 25 meters apart. Vegetation and terrain should allow cover and concealment for facilities, vehicles and equipment.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Battalion headquarters support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-11 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-11. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0006,
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities**

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015	5-10
ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST (FORWARD)	63-1-4016	5-14
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4017	5-225
SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4019	5-20
ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4020	5-23
OPERATE THE SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-4022	5-229
OPERATE THE TACTICAL AREA OF LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER	63-1-4037	5-234
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, CHEMICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS	63-1-4040	5-102
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4050	5-246
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT	63-1-4326	5-168

**BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
PROVIDE DIRECT LOGISTICS SUPPORT TO AVIATION BRIGADE,
CAVALRY SQUADRON AND AREA LOGISTICS SUPPORT TO ATTACHED
ELEMENTS
STX 63-1-E0011**

1. Objective. This STX is designed to train the ASB commander, staff and other key members with practice in establishing situational awareness and planning, coordinating, and command and control of subordinate units in supporting combat operations of the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. The staff must become proficient in gaining total asset visibility of sustainment, resources and the distribution system operating in support of Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. The staff must become proficient in planning and coordinating internal and external logistics support operations; providing intelligence; supervising OPSEC and NBC defense operations; and providing personnel service support, administrative support and command and control. This STX combines the elements of distribution management, planning, coordination, and supervision necessary to provide logistics support to the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements Operations.

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STXs - Direct Logistics and Combat Health Services Support Operations and Manage Distribution Systems.

c. This STX can be used to plan, coordinate and provide command, control and situational awareness of logistics support operations and drive distribution systems during Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron tactical operations as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company-level STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX is supported by company-level STXs - Provide Supply Support (Supply Company), Provide Ground Maintenance Support (Ground Maintenance Company), Provide Aviation Maintenance Support (Aviation Maintenance Company).

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) Classroom activities that discuss use of SOP, CSS responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 1-500, 9-43-1, 9-43-2, 55-30, 63-2-2, 63-23-2, 100-10-1, 101-5, 101-5-1 and a review of the T&EO listed in this STX.

(2) CPX and MAPEX that use staff training to teach teamwork and proper preparation of estimates and orders that support the commander.

(3) CFX or TEWT using the ASB staff and a limited number of vehicles equipped with digital communications from subordinate units as those leaders train their related STX as part of the battalion officer/NCO development program.

(4) Games and simulations using logistics requirements driven by an aviation brigade-level element and or cavalry squadron-level element.

(5) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the real time capability of Battlefield Functional Area Control System architecture.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for establishing situational awareness, planning and implementing support plans (FMs 1-111, 1-500, 63-2-2, 63-23-2)

(b) The ASB, HQ, DISCOM, Aviation Brigade, and Cavalry Squadron TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted of the training area that the CSS operations would be performed, if possible.

(d) The following leader tasks must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (ASB Commander or XO) include: identify specified, implied and essential tasks of the brigade OPORD; establish support priorities in accordance with OPORD; and provide recommendations to supported brigade commander. Also approve ASB input to Aviation Brigade/Cavalry Squadron support plans; reassess requirements; reallocate resources; provide command and control and situational awareness; and supervise activities of the staff.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks listed in Table 4-16, and leaders have been trained in the leader tasks, this STX can be trained under several options:

- (a) In a field or MOUT environment.
- (b) With or without NBC environment.
- (c) Day or night.
- (d) With or without OPFOR interdictions.
- (e) Offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations.

(2) The trainer must become proficient in the basics of gaining total asset visibility of sustainment resources, planning, coordinating and supervising combat service support operations before attempting complex options.

(3) In giving his guidance and possible courses of action, the senior trainer should offer variations. Some variations are listed below.

- (a) Secure local area terrain features that could adversely affect the support mission.
- (b) Increase the size of the Aviation Brigade task force.
- (c) Support multinational element.
- (d) Support non-linear or deep operations.
- (e) Apply automation constraints.

(4) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of FTX.

(5) When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective to include counter-tasks for the OPFOR. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The commander provides planning guidance based upon the Aviation Brigade Commander's concept of operations or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations are based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the scheme and priorities of support. Maximum use of digital communications should be adhered to.

b. Support considerations for offensive, defensive, and retrograde operations are found in FMs 1-111, 63-2-2, and 63-23-2.

c. Staff recommendations are provided in hard copy to senior trainer for evaluation.

d. All reports should be submitted in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. The Support Operations Officer and the Brigade S4 develop the support plan. The ASB staff implements the plan and monitors its progress using digital communications and logistics STAMIS.

f. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1) Did the ASB logistics plan conform to the ASB, DISCOM and Brigade Commander's guidance?

(2) Did the subordinate units implement the ASB logistics plan properly?

(3) Did the ASB logistics plan adequately meet the needs of the Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron, and attached units?

g. Deficiencies identified in (1) and (3) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory but the unit execution is poor, then more frequent performances of support missions during FTX or company-level STX are required.

h. This exercise begins with the assignment of responsibility for developing the service support annex and ends when the ASA is under a Level II/III threat. AARs are conducted after staff input, after dissemination of the support plan, and a final AAR after implementation of plan. Table 4-12 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-12. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0011, Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>	
1.	Commander's Guidance		30 min
2.	Determine Requirements and Sustainment Resources.	1 hr	30 min
3.	Staff Input		30 min
4.	AAR		30 min
5.	Develop Tentative Logistics Support Plan and Combat Health Services Support Plan		45 min
6.	Brief Commander		30 min
7.	Disseminate Plan		30 min
8.	AAR	1 hr	
9.	Develop Internal Logistics Support Plan and Combat Health Services Support Plan		45 min
10.	Monitor Implementation	1 hr	30 min
11.	Monitor Operations and Make Adjustments	1 hr	30 min
12.	Anticipate Future Requirements	1 hr	30 min
13.	OPFOR Sighted		15 min
14.	CSS Degradation Occur	1 hr	
15.	Priority of Logistics in Maintained	1 hr	
16.	Rear operations Intensify		45 min
17.	Conduct Final AAR	1 hr	
Total Time: 15 hrs 30 min			
NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the battalion staff.			

5. General Situation.

a. The ASB is deployed in a combat zone. The ASB mission is to provide logistics support to the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron.

b. The Aviation Brigade commander has issued a mission statement. The ASB staff and key leaders are assembled to begin planning.

c. The Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron OPLANs/OPORDs are available. ASB status reports of supply and maintenance capabilities and sustainment resources are available.

d. After the planning phase, brigade and squadron combat operations commence. Requirements are generated by Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. Some aviation and cavalry elements require back up and/or reinforcing support. Ammunition and fuel is distributed forward to Attack Battalions and the Cavalry Squadron. Field maintenance and aviation maintenance are conducted as far forward as possible using contact trams, repair teams and combat system support elements (DS support to Cavalry Squadron) positioned in unit support areas. Maximum use should be made of throughput and transload of sustainment stocks from higher echelon logistics bases and facilities down to the lowest level DSU or customer logistics release point. Corps and DSB combat service support units are operational and provide backup or reinforcing support to the ASB. CSSCS and FBCB2 systems provide situational awareness to enable a brigade/squadron wide, common, relevant picture of the combat posture of the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron. MTS enables precision throughput of sustainment stocks to ASB direct support units or unit level logistics release points.

e. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is digitally disseminated from Aviation Brigade or DISCOM to the ASB S2/S3 Section using the appropriate BFACS. OPSEC and physical security measures have been implemented by the battalion.

f. The OPFOR may be in the form of conventional or unconventional forces and have the capability of intelligence gathering, overt and covert attacks. OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. Local security is maintained by the use of OPSEC countermeasure techniques.

g. OPFOR has the capability to launch NBC attack. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred.

h. Subordinate units' battle rosters have been received. Casualties, transfers and enemy prisoners of war (EPW) cause personnel adjustments.

i. During this STX, brigade and squadron combat operations stabilize to a degree that administrative services can be provided.

6. Special Situation.

a. The commander issues the following FRAGO:

"We will continue to support Aviation Brigade, attached elements and Cavalry Squadron from this location for the next 2 days. Priority of support is to ---- Battalion/Squadron. The enemy is capable of mounting attacks throughout the ASA and also of bringing indirect fire upon our unit positions, bases and facilities. I want to maintain a seamless and synchronized flow of materiel and other sustainment resources to battalions, companies, and troops with a minimum of double handling of cargo or customer wait time. I want ground and aviation maintenance managers to strictly enforce repair cycle time on all items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. Make maximum use of throughput and transload operations down to company or troop level. CSSCS and FBCB2 give us an unprecedented ability to see the battlefield as it unfolds, and allows us to anticipate and project requirements, not just react to them. Movement tracking capability enables us to support the throughput of sustainment resources and LOGPAC operations with precision down to customer LRP or weapons systems level. I want systems in place to establish and maintain asset and intransit visibility of sustainment resources in the distribution system to enable rapid direct, redirect, cross-leveling or massing of logistics at critical points within the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron area of responsibility. Keep a close eye on the movements of the CAV when operating forward of the ASA. They will be a challenge to support. Continue to seek ways to maximize distribution of sustainment resources to aviation units and Cavalry Squadron. I want to be updated on the status of support as soon as you encounter problems or there is a break in the distribution pipeline. Now begin your planning process for providing combat service support to support brigade and squadron combat operations."

- b. The commander issues the following additional instructions:

"This exercise ends when subordinate elements and sustainment resources are threatened with a Level II/III attack. You should conduct AARs after staff input, at the completion of the CSS plan and at end of the exercise. If necessary, run the exercise again until I am satisfied with the staff's performance."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the battalion headquarters staff, then one evaluator per staff section is required. If the STX is conducted as part of a battalion FTX, the required evaluators should include the sum of evaluators of each subordinate unit STX.

- b. Opposing Force:

(1) The OPFOR is not required when exercise is conducted as a staff STX. OPFOR should be used if exercise is part of a battalion FTX.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) Miles can be used, or the controllers can assess damage to the units in the ASB.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the headquarters are used. When OPFOR are employed, a vehicle and digital communications are needed for the evaluator/controller.

d. **Maneuver Area.** A training area of sufficient size is required to support the number of vehicles and equipment in an ASA. Vehicles should be spaced a minimum of 25 meters apart. Vegetation and terrain should allow cover and concealment for facilities, vehicles and equipment.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements for this STX.** Battalion requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-13 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-13. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0011, Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
OPERATE LOGISTICS SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4022	5-229
COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4025	5-111
COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4026	5-116
COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4027	5-121
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4028	5-127
COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4029	5-133
COORDINATE CLASS I, VI AND WATER SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4030	5-136
COORDINATE COMBAT HEALTH SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4031	5-139
COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4033	5-142
COORDINATE FIELD SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4034	5-145
ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENT (DIGITIZED)S	63-1-4035	5-148
COORDINATE SUPPORT FOR REGENERATION ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4036	5-151
OPERATE TACTICAL SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4037	5-234
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE PERSONNEL SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4042	5-154
PROVIDE ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4043	5-158
CONDUCT COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4044	5-162
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326	5-168

BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE FORCE PROTECTION ACTIVITIES
STX 63-1-E0008

1. Objective. This STX provides the ASB staff and key leaders practice in planning, coordinating and providing command, control and situational awareness of force protection activities in defense of ASA bases and facilities. The staff must become proficient in planning force protection measures, establishing and coordinating base and base cluster defense, operating the base cluster operations center, directing responses to ASA threats, coordinating response forces, friendly indirect fire, CAS and directing ADC operations. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating and directing procedures necessary to accomplish force protection activities.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements.

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STX - Coordinate Force Protection Activities.

c. This STX is supported by company-level STX - Defend Assigned Area.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement force protection activities as a part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate ASBs, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 63-2-2, 63-23-2 and 90-14 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout this STX using the real time capability of Battlefield Functional Area Control System architecture.

(7) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing force protection activities.

(b) Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where force protection activities will take place.

(c) Leaders should review the ASB, DISCOM and Aviation Brigade force protection SOPs and OPORD.

(d) The leader tasks which must be trained or executed by the senior (ASB commander or XO) with this STX are: approve defense plan, implement defense plan, identify decision point for commitment of response forces, and command, control and situational awareness of the defense area.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-14, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Simultaneous threats.

(c) Day or night.

(2) The staff must become proficient in the doctrine and TTP of planning, coordinating and executing force protection activities before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the staff sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4) When using OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set up

specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress upon the staff.

4. **Training Enhancers.**

a. The commander provides planning guidance based upon the brigade or DISCOM commander's concept of operations or based upon his judgment. Intelligence reports influence force protection planning. Maximum use of digital communications should be adhered to.

b. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior for evaluation.

c. Force protection limitations and assumptions include:

(1) The lack of mobility impedes the ability of sustainment facilities to rapidly shift locations.

(2) The lack of heavy weapons prevents the ASB from decisively engaging and defeating a major enemy ground attack. LPs and OPs must be located far enough forward of the perimeter and linked to give early warning, and the response force, friendly indirect fire or CAS should be committed as soon as the primary threat avenue is identified and the size of the threat exceeds Level 1.

(3) Failing early notification, the defense should prevent penetration of subordinate element bases and facilities by committing the internal response force or shifting personnel from unengaged sectors of the perimeter.

(4) Once the OPFOR has achieved penetration of the sustainment base, rally points within each company area will allow commanders to regain control over their elements for the purpose of reestablishing the organizational integrity prior to counterattacks to regain lost ground. Upon arrival of the TCF or Military Police (MP) units, base commander will handover responsibility for counterattack to the commander of the TCF, or MP unit. Base commander will place base personnel under operational control of the counterattacking force for the purpose of regaining control of bases and facilities. Upon successful completion of the counterattack or instructions from the commander, TCF or MP unit, base personnel will revert to their original mission and command and control structure.

d. These assumptions are based on the fact that when the enemy knows what type of units (CSS and CS) are grouped together, and where those units are located, they will become a prime target for threat weaponry.

e. MP will be committed as a response force against a Level II threat. The ASB and MP response forces will drive the OPFOR out of the area. MP response forces are coordinated and controlled by the DISCOM S3 in rear areas.

f. Sustainment of the Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron are dependent upon the survival of the ASB. High-risk measures in defense of ASB elements and facilities are justified and may be required in order to preserve the fighting force. These required measures include:

(1) Total commitment of personnel to the defense until additional combat forces can be brought to bear.

(2) Commitment of all available combat/combat support weaponry (including those in repair or stock) to preserve Aviation Brigade and Cavalry Squadron sustainment resources.

(3) Supplies and equipment should be destroyed to prevent capture by threat forces.

g. There is no justification for abandonment of the sustainment facilities and its sustainment resources.

h. Unit should not abandon sustainment bases and facilities without approval from the Aviation Brigade or DISCOM commander.

i. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1) Did the force protection plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2) Did the subordinate units properly implement the force protection plan?

j. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are unit weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory but the unit execution is poor, then more frequent performances of force protection missions should be conducted during FTX or company-level STX.

k. This exercise begins with a Level II/III threat and ends once restoration of subordinate elements and facilities are completed. AARs are conducted after completion of ADC activities and after restoration operations. Table 4-14 is a suggested scenario.

**Table 4-14. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0008,
Supervise Force Protection Activities**

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
1.	Commander's Guidance	10 min
2.	Determine Assets and Requirements	1 hr
3.	Staff Input	1 hr
4.	Establish Local Security	20 min
5.	Develop Force Protection Plan	1 hr 30 min
6.	Develop ADC Plan	1 hr 30 min
7.	AAR	1 hr
8.	Brief Commander	30 min
9.	Disseminate Plan	30 min
10.	Enemy Patrolling Occurs	30 min
11.	Determine Response	30 min
12.	Level II Attack	2 hrs
13.	MP Response Force Arrives	2 hrs
14.	Reorganization	4 hrs
16.	AAR	1 hr
17.	Level III Attack	1 hr
18.	Defend	1 hr
19.	Execute Battle Handover to TCF	1 hr
20.	ASB Elements OPCON to TCF	1 hr
21.	Damage Assessment	2 hrs
22.	Conduct Area Damage Control Operations	2 hrs
23.	Continue Logistics Support Mission	1 hr
24.	AAR	1 hr
Total Time 27 hrs 30 min		
*Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the battalion staff.		

5. General Situation.

a. The ASB is forward deployed in a combat zone. The ASB mission is to provide logistics support to an aviation brigade and cavalry squadron and area support to attached elements. The aviation brigade is in contact with enemy forces and the enemy has either infiltrated or air dropped platoon size (+) or larger forces

to seek out command and control and support elements and facilities. A Level II or III threat condition is reached.

b. The ASB has the responsibility for the defense of the base cluster. The ASB commander is responsible for the defense of the base cluster against Level I and limited Level II attacks.

c. Level II/III attacks are handed over to MP forces or a tactical combat force (TCF).

d. The attack has caused heavy damage to ASA bases and facilities. ADC teams have been designated. Priorities have been established for ADC.

e. The ASA bases facilities are established IAW SOP and are supporting current brigade operations.

f. The force protection plan is initiated with security elements in positions.

6. Special Situation.

a. The battalion commander is conducting a staff meeting where he provides the following guidance:

"The Aviation Brigade S2 has reported that company and smaller-sized enemy units have begun operating throughout the division rear area. Their mission appears to be locating CSS and CS units and inflicting as much damage as possible. Some elements are mounted, however, most are dismounted. Notify all units to be prepared to repel any attack before it reaches the perimeter of bases and facilities. Execute the base cluster defense plan. Begin your planning process."

b. The battalion commander issues the following instructions.

"This exercise ends when the subordinate elements and facilities returns to normal operational status. You should conduct an ARR after the Force Protection Plan is completed, after reorganization and after completion of area damage control activities. If necessary, I will run the exercise again until I am satisfied with the staff's performance."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the ASB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. If the STX is conducted for the staff, one OC per staff section is required. If the STX is conducted as part of

a FTX, the required evaluators should be the sum of all subordinate elements STX. Each OPFOR platoon should have one controller/evaluator to control activity, assess damage and casualties and evaluate tactics and techniques of ASB personnel. An additional evaluator should accompany each response element and have similar responsibilities.

b. **Opposing Force.** An OPFOR platoon (+) or company is required for the exercise for Level III activities. The OPFOR should be well-trained in patrolling and assault tactics and have specific missions within the ASA. During the conduct of an FTX both mounted and dismounted operations should be executed. The following guidelines assist in assessing damage:

(1) Any soldier that masks a firing weapon is a casualty.

(2) Any soldier that remains exposed for longer than three consecutive seconds is a casualty.

(3) Any soldier or vehicle within five meters of a grenade, unless protected by sump or cover is a casualty/destroyed.

(4) Any vehicle or equipment that OPFOR comes within five meters is destroyed.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB are used.

d. **Maneuver Area.** An established ASA should occupy an area between six and twenty kilometers square with the associated road network.

e. **Master Incident List.** During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive ASB actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. T&EO Sequence. Table 4-15 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

**Table 4-15. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0008,
Supervise Force Protection Activities**

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4012	5-217
PLAN REAR AREA OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4014	5-220
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4040	5-102
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4041	5-238
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4045	5-243
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4050	5-246
PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4051	5-7
DIRECT RESPONSE TO THREAT ACTIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4052	5-249
DIRECT AREA DAMAGE CONTROL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4053	5-253
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4303	5-178
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4326	5-168

BATTALION HEADQUARTERS, AVIATION SUPPORT BATTALION
SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE
SUPERVISE REDEPLOYMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS TO HOME
STATION
STX 63-1-E0009

1. Objective. This STX trains the ASB commander, staff and key leaders in supervising the redeployment of subordinate elements from a theater of operations to home station or a mobilization site. This STX also provides the commander and key leaders and staff with practice in planning, controlling and coordinating subordinate unit redeployment activities. The ASB must become proficient in planning and preparing subordinate units for force projection operations.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the ASB FTX - Support Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Attached Elements

b. This STX supports the DISCOM STX - Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station.

c. This STX can be used to plan and implement the redeployment of subordinate elements to home station as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding company STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX is supported by company-level STX - Redeploy Unit to Home Station.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement redeployment (land, sea, or air) of the ASB as a part of an FTX or CPX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 1-111, 55-9, 55-10, 63-2-2, 63-23-2, and 100-17 series; and ARs 700-84 and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EO listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders. STX support such exercises.

(5) Simulations and games are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They are also used to exercise command, control and situational awareness at various command and staff levels.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the contingency plans and procedures for planning and executing redeployment operations.

(b) Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where redeployment training activities will take place.

(c) Leaders should review the ASB and higher echelon redeployment SOPs.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the ASB demonstrates proficiency for the tasks in Table 4-16, this STX can be trained under several options.

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Various unit category levels.

(c) Different modes of transportation.

(d) Day or night.

(e) All environmental conditions

(2) The ASB must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing redeployment activities before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the ASB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The commander, in coordination with Headquarters, DISCOM, secures redeployment guidance/orders, pertinent plans/SOPs and reviews redeployment contingency plans. Maximum use of digital communications should be adhered to.

b. Subordinate unit commanders update unit redeployment plans in coordination with HQ, ASB.

c. The DISCOM S2/S3 provides ASB with the redeployment sequence data.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the senior OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with the receipt of a redeployment warning order and ends when the ASB is at home station. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-16. This table includes a suggested scenario.

Table 4-16. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion STX 63-1-E0009, Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station

<u>EVENT</u>	<u>ACTION</u>	<u>ESTIMATED TIME</u>
1.	Receive Warning Order	10 min
2.	Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	1 hr
3.	Prepare Redeployment Movement Order/Plan	2 hrs
4.	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hrs
5.	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	1 hr
6.	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs
7.	Coordinate Home Station Activities	1 hr
8.	AAR	1 hr

Total Time: 10 hrs 10 min

Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.

Some events are accomplished concurrently while others occur in sequence.

5. General Situation.

- a. The ASB is currently deployed in a theater of operations. The ASB is under the command and control of HQ, DISCOM.
- b. Unit commanders provide personnel and equipment status reports.
- c. The MACOM logistics element provides required redeployment support.
- d. APOEs, SPOEs, and the CONUS location are identified.

6. FRAGO. The commander issues the following FRAGO:

"The ASB will begin redeployment operations immediately. We must be prepared to support Aviation brigade and Cavalry Squadron through their redeployment. S2/S3 you have the lead. All units will prepare personnel for redeployment to CONUS by air and equipment by sea and air. I want 100% personnel and equipment accountability. Support Operations, I want to be briefed on the disposition of sustainment stocks remaining under control of ASB subordinate units and in the hands of Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and attached elements. Coordinate turn in of excess sustainment stocks with DISCOM Support Operations. Begin your planning process to prepare the ASB for redeployment. Be prepared to move to the RAA/TAA within ----- hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this STX."

7. Support Requirements.

- a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the battalion commander or battalion XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating the details of redeployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate the accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations and the thoroughness of coordination.
- b. Opposing Force:
 - (1) The OPFOR is not required for this situational training exercise.
 - (2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.
 - (3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to facilities, equipment and personnel casualties.

c. **Vehicles and Communications.** Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the ASB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and digital communications for the OCs are used. The senior trainer/OC requires digital communications to provide input from the MIL.

d. **Maneuver Area.** Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area for setting up operations, which is 6 by 20 kilometers. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. **Master Incident List.** During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive staff actions. MIL should be input using MTS, analog, and digital communications.

f. **Consolidated Support Requirements.** Battalion headquarters support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate unit.

8. **T&EO Sequence.** Table 4-17 lists the T&EOs for this STX.

Table 4-17. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to use in evaluating STX 63-1-E0009, Supervise Redeployment of Subordinate Elements to Home Station		
TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED)	63-1-4015	5-10
SUPERVISE BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8053	5-32
COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8065	5-72
PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER	63-1-8066	5-75
PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT	63-1-8067	5-78
PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES	63-1-8068	5-83
PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES	63-1-8069	5-86
COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES	63-1-8070	5-89
PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT	63-1-8074	5-259

Chapter 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. INTRODUCTION. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. STRUCTURE. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. FORMAT. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference it is underlined.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task Standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO Column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a

means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR Standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished -- not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. USE. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Intelligence

PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4051)..... 5-7

Maneuver

PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY
ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4015)..... 5-10
ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST [FORWARD] (DIGITIZED)
(63-1-4016) 5-14
COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS
(DIGITIZED) (63-1-4018) 5-17
SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND
BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4019)..... 5-20
ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND
ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4020) 5-23
DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ALERT ACTIVITIES (63-1-8050) 5-25
ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER (63-1-8051) 5-27
OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER (63-1-8052) 5-29
SUPERVISE BATTALION DEPLOYMENT/REDEPLOYMENT
ACTIVITIES (63-1-8053)..... 5-32
UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER (63-1-8054)..... 5-36
COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM PROCESSING
SUPPORT (63-1-8055)..... 5-39
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE
SERVICES SUPPORT (63-1-8056)..... 5-42
COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT (63-1-8057)..... 5-46
COORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT (63-1-8058)..... 5-49

PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS (63-1-8059)	5-51
PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT (63-1-8060).....	5-55
PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES (63-1- 8061)	5-60
COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT (63-1-8062)	5-63
COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT (63-1-8063)	5-66
PERFORM HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES (63- 1-8064).....	5-69
COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT (63-1- 8065)	5-72
PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER (63-1-8066)	5-75
PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT (63-1-8067).....	5-78
PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES (63-1- 8068)	5-83
PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES (63-1-8069)....	5-86
COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES (63-1-8070).....	5-89
DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES (63-1-8071).....	5-93
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT (63-1-8072)	5-96

Mobility and Survivability

SUPERVISE OPERATIONS SECURITY PROGRAM (DIGITIZED) (63- 1-4038).....	5-99
SUPERVISE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL DEFENSE OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4040).....	5-102

Combat Service Support

PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4024)	5-108
COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4025).....	5-111
COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4026).....	5-116
COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4027).....	5-121
COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4028)	5-127
COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII, AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63- 1-4029)	5-133
COORDINATE CLASS I, VI, AND WATER SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4030)	5-136
COORDINATE COMBAT HEALTH SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4031)	5-139
COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4033).....	5-142
COORDINATE FIELD SERVICES SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4034)..	5-145
ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENTS (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4035).....	5-148

COORDINATE SUPPORT FOR REGENERATION ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4036)	5-151
PROVIDE PERSONNEL SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4042)	5-154
PROVIDE ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63- 1-4043)	5-158
CONDUCT COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4044)	5-162
COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4303)	5-165
PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4326)	5-168

Command and Control

CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4001)	5-171
CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4002)	5-175
FORMULATE FEASIBLE COURSES OF ACTION (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4003)	5-178
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4004)	5-181
DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4005)	5-185
DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4006)	5-189
DEVELOP SUPPORT OPERATIONS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1- 4007)	5-193
DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S [OPERATION] ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4008)	5-197
PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4009)	5-202
DEVELOP ROAD MOVEMENT ORDER (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4010)	5-207
DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4011)	5-213
PLAN BATTALION AREA TACTICAL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4012)	5-217
PLAN REAR OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4014)	5-220
ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4017)	5-225
OPERATE THE SUPPORT AREA OF LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4022)	5-229
OPERATE TACTICAL SUPPORT AREA OF THE LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4037)	5-234
MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4041)	5-238
PROVIDE COMMAND AND CONTROL (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4045)	5-243
OPERATE BASE CLUSTER OPERATIONS CENTER (DIGITIZED) (63- 1-4050)	5-246
DIRECT RESPONSE TO THREAT ACTIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4052) ..	5-249
DIRECT AREA DAMAGE CONTROL OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63- 1-4053)	5-253
PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER (63-1-8073)	5-256

PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT (63-1-8074) 5-259

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

ELEMENT: S2/S3 SECTION**TASK: PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4051)**

(FM 34-3)

(AR 190-13)

(FM 3-3)

(FM 3-4)

(FM 34-80)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-2-2)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support operations have commenced. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from the higher HQ S2/S3 Section and the supporting rear operations element. Intelligence information is required by commander, staff, and subordinate units for current operations and planning. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to appropriate agencies and elements IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors decrease the processing and dissemination of intelligence information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. S2/S3 Section identifies information requirements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies current intelligence information requirements. b. Lists PIR. c. Lists current intelligence holdings' shortcomings. 2. S2/S3 Section assembles required intelligence information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares information collection plan. b. Submits request for additional support to higher HQ S2/S3 Section and supporting rear operations element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. c. Revises collection plan to reflect current needs. 3. S2/S3 Section disseminates intelligence. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies reports for relevancy, reliability, and accuracy. b. Records intelligence information in journal. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Identifies significant effects of weather. d. Records pertinent weather data. e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. f. Annotates analog/digital situation map with current friendly and enemy locations. g. Prepares INTSUM. h. Disseminates INTSUM to appropriate agencies and elements using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>4. S2/S3 Section maintains classified information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Stores classified information IAW current OPSEC instructions, TSOP, and AR 190-13. b. Marks all classified information IAW TSOP and AR 190-13. c. Controls access to classified information. d. Enforces information security measures. e. Provides classified maps. f. Maintains emergency destruction instructions IAW AR 190-13 and TSOP. <p>5. S2/S3 Section plans EPW handling. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.13-0001, O3-3751.01-0101)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates handling and locations of holding areas with supporting MP element and higher HQ S2/S3 Section. b. Monitors EPW handling operations to ensure compliance with the TSOP, OPORD, and the provisions of the Geneva Convention. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-3711.13-0001	Process Captured Materiel
	O3-3751.01-0101	Supervise Processing of Captives at Unit Level

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: PERFORM BATTALION ADVANCE/QUARTERING PARTY ACTIVITIES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4015)

(FM 63-20-1)	(AR 530-1)	(FM 101-5)
(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 63-21-1)
(FM 63-23-2)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPOD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Departure time for the advance/quartering parties has arrived. The advance/quartering parties are prepared to depart the assembly area. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is provided all essential information, to include the route, order of march, and ETA for the main body. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is issued tentative battalion area and CP layout, traffic circulation, and communications plans. The battalion advance/quartering party consists of an OIC; security, staff, and communications elements; and representatives from subordinate units. Sufficient guides, markers, and other equipment are available. Battalion advance/quartering party deploys in MOPP2. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. NOTE: If survey team(s) monitor high levels of contamination, the area should be evacuated immediately. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance/quartering party's movement is conducted IAW movement order. All new area preparation tasks as directed by the S2/S3 are accomplished IAW TSOP and the OPOD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section organizes battalion advance/quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides required size of parties to subordinate units. b. Briefs party leaders IAW the TSOP. c. Dispatches party as prescribed in the movement order. 2. Battalion advance/quartering party moves to new operating site. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-329-1019, 071-331-0820)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using radio and MTS.</p> <p>b. Crosses SP, checkpoints, and the RP at times prescribed in the movement order.</p> <p>c. Follows route prescribed in the movement order.</p> <p>d. Reports route changes, intelligence, and any other information to the main body by route guides, route markers, MTS or radio.</p> <p>e. Moves battalion advance/quartering party into a concealed, predesignated assembly area to await clearance of new area.</p> <p>* 3. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises securing the new battalion area. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 031-503-2001, 031-503-3006, 051-193-1013, STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2015)</p> <p>a. Dispatches security element to sweep the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence.</p> <p>b. Dispatches NBC survey and monitoring teams personnel to sweep assigned sectors.</p> <p>c. Places OP on probable avenues of approach consistent with personnel assets.</p> <p>d. Conducts area reconnaissance (mounted or dismounted) with subordinate elements' leaders pointing out general locations of each element.</p> <p>e. Moves entire party into the new area.</p> <p>f. Forwards closing report to main body, if possible, using MTS or radio.</p> <p>4. Battalion advance/quartering party secures the new battalion area. (STP 21-1-SMCT: 031-503-1014, 031-503-1020, 051-192-1135)</p> <p>a. Dons protective mask before entering new area.</p> <p>b. Sweeps the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence (security elements).</p> <p>c. Surveys assigned areas for NBC contamination (Survey and Monitor Teams).</p> <p>d. Occupies OP on probable avenues of approach.</p> <p>e. Moves into new area as directed by the party leader.</p> <p>* 5. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001)</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or radio.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Monitors movement of each subordinate unit's advance/quartering party into their respective areas to ensure compliance with layout plan and traffic circulation plans. c. Supervises implementation of hasty security plan to ensure that each element secures its individual area. d. Supervises implementation of communications plan in coordination with the communications representatives to ensure some type of communications exists between the CP and all subordinate units. e. Enforces OPSEC measures during preparation of subordinate units' areas. f. Tasks unit representatives to block all other possible entrance and exit points with available materials. <p>6. Battalion advance/quartering party implements tentative battalion layout plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marks battalion traffic circulation pattern IAW layout plan. b. Establishes entrance/exit points to all subordinate units' locations. c. Constructs obstructions to block all other possible entrance and exit points. d. Forwards plan to battalion HQ using digital communications. <p>7. Battalion advance/quartering party implements hasty security plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares battalion hasty defensive sketch. b. Enforces camouflage and concealment measures. c. Identifies locations for emplacement of emergency alarm devices. <p>8. Battalion advance/quartering party implements analog and digital communications plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes wire, radio, and local area networks between CP and subordinate and adjacent units. b. Establishes wire, radio, and local area networks between CP and higher HQ. c. Employs signal security measures. <p>*9. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Identifies guide pickup points. c. Briefs ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC measures. d. Directs dispatching of unit guides to the RP. e. Monitors subordinate units' guide activities to ensure compliance with party leaders guidance and TSOP. f. Enforces countersurveillance measures. g. Provides progress report to the S2/S3 and commander upon arrival of main body using radio, wire, courier or MTS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1014	Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper
	031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper
	051-192-1135	Locate Mines By Probing
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2001	Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit
	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring
	051-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
	071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay
STP 21-II-MQS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	04-5030.00-2015	Supervise Radiation Monitoring

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S6 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH BATTALION COMMAND POST [FORWARD] (DIGITIZED)
 (63-1-4016)

(FM 63-20-1)	(FM 101-5)	(FM 19-30)
(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 63-21-1)
(FM 63-23-2)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPOD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured new area. The battalion staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the CP (Forward). The staff advance party element is part of the advance/quartering party. The S2/S3 Section has provided instructions relating to CP site preparation. Communications requirements have been requested from the supporting signal element. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and control of battalion operations continues during battalion HQ "jump" to a new location. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish the CP (Forward).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element establishes CP (Forward). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positions vehicles, tentage, or equipment to be used IAW layout plan. b. Sets up internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information. c. Sets up maps and overlays that display locations of support facilities. d. Constructs barriers around CP (Forward) as prescribed by the TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element supervises forward tactical operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides staff supervision over establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with layout plan and TSOP. b. Establishes analog/digital communications with higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order, TSOP, and SOI/SSI. c. Provides movement assistance to subordinate units out of the range of rear CP's communications. d. Maintains situation map(s) with current disposition of friendly and enemy units using appropriate BFACS. <p>3. Battalion HQ Advance Party Element supervises forward logistics and combat health service support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, radio wire or courier. b. Integrates planned logistics and combat health service operations into the division distribution system. c. Establishes intransit and total asset visibility of sustainment resources flowing into the area. d. Directs, redirects, cross-levels or masses logistics and combat health service support at critical points in the area of responsibility based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance. e. Maintains analog/digital situation maps depicting subordinate and supported units in the battalion's area of responsibility using appropriate BFACS. f. Maintains current customer listing. g. Maintains current staff files and journals. h. Relays operational information from supported units to rear party CP that affects support operations using appropriate BFACS, radio, wire or courier. i. Provides current operations briefing to S2/S3 and respective staff sections upon arrival of main body. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: STAFF SECTIONS

TASK: COORDINATE MOVEMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4018)

(FM 55-1)	(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-4)
(FM 55-10)	(FM 55-30)	(FM 63-20-1)
(FM 63-21-1)	(FM 63-23-2)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays with SP, checkpoints, RP, critical points and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. First battalion element crosses its SP. All subordinate unit relocation plans are available. The S2/S3 Section is required to monitor road marches until all closing reports are received. Deviations from movement order occur. Each subordinate unit and battalion HQ is required to make a closing report as prescribed in the TSOP. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Rear party departs when main body has established the new area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All subordinate units are relocated to new areas as prescribed in movement order. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase staff reaction and coordination of movement deviations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Staff Sections coordinate support with HQ company for the move. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Coordinate additional CHS requirements with medical element that has area responsibility. Coordinate additional recovery requirements with maintenance element that has area responsibility. Coordinate engineer and MP support requirements with elements that have area responsibility. Coordinate convoy clearance request with movement control element that has area responsibility. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Brief HQ company march commander on tactical situation, communications frequencies and procedures, and emergency action procedures.</p> <p>f. Coordinate constant communications from the start point until the release point.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section monitors movement of subordinate companies and battalion HQ. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 031-503-3004, 081-831-0101, 113-573-8006, STP 21-II-MQS: 01-7300.75-0500, O3-4995.90-0010, O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS, or radio.</p> <p>b. Maintains communications with each subordinate unit and battalion HQ elements IAW movement order and TSOP.</p> <p>c. Maintains situation map(s) and overlays displaying subordinate units and battalion HQ elements' movement progress.</p> <p>d. Provides corrective actions to subordinate units and battalion HQ elements when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, route adjustments) using MTS, or radio.</p> <p>e. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency.</p> <p>f. Coordinates en route subordinate units' support requirements with area support units until all known requirements are fulfilled.</p> <p>g. Records closing reports from subordinate units and battalion HQ elements upon receipt.</p> <p>h. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and higher HQ using radio, MTS or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Section directs logistics and combat health service operations during move.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS, MTS, and radio.</p> <p>b. Coordinates requirements with the supported unit(s) and supporting material management element.</p> <p>c. Coordinates pickup or delivery of sustainment resources between subordinate units and requesting units.</p> <p>d. Communicates emergency requirements to the main body battalion staff.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Provides close down report to CP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area
	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
	113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations
	O3-4995.90-0010	Direct Vehicle and Equipment Recovery Operations
	O3-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 SECTION
 STAFF SECTIONS

TASK: SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS AND
 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4019)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party is dispatched to the new CP area. Subordinate units are moving along designated route(s) to new area(s). Subordinate units are required to submit closing reports. The advance/quartering party has established the advance CP. The battalion advance/quartering party leader briefs the commander on the status of new area preparation. The S2/S3 issued occupation plans to the CP and subordinate units. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Subordinate units, support facilities, and the CP are established IAW layout plan, OPORD, and TSOP. All new CP preparation tasks are accomplished as directed by the S2/S3 IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to established a CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section monitors movement of advance/quartering parties. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-329-1019) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Maintains constant radio communications IAW movement order and TSOP. c. Coordinates support or emergency action requirements with appropriate element based on assistance required. 2. Battalion HQ performs CP functions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervises establishment of battalion area IAW layout plan and TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Establishes battalion messenger system until local area networks and wire communications have been established. c. Coordinates logistics and combat health service operations from forward location (limited operations). d. Supervises the establishment of local area networks and wire communications within the CP area. e. Sets up battalion analog/digital situation map(s). 3. S2/S3 Section monitors deployment of subordinate units and battalion HQ. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-329-1019, STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001, O3-5101.00-0283, O3-8310.00-9000) a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Supervises deployment of units as prescribed by the layout plan. c. Coordinates impact of position changes with other staff sections. d. Approves position changes of subordinate elements that are caused by terrain and/or tactical considerations. e. Posts analog/digital situation map(s) and overlay(s) to reflect new positions. f. Provides deployment update to commander and XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	O3-5101.00-0283	Supervise the Maintenance of Unit Prescribed Load List

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References

Task Number

Task Title

03-8310.00-9000

Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine
and Field Sanitation Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: STAFF SECTIONS

TASK: ESTABLISH LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER AND ADMINISTRATIVE AREAS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4020)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 63-21-1)
 (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The main body of the battalion HQ has arrived at the new location. The S2/S3 has selected the general location of the LOC and administrative areas. Advance CP personnel have identified specific locations and initial preparations are completed. All required personnel and equipment are available. The CP (Forward) maintains operational control of the battalion until the new LOC is established. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: LOC is capable of communicating with and controlling support assets and survival measure assets within the time specified in the TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to establish logistics center and administrative areas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 and Support Operations Sections establish LOC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify staff working areas that facilitates immediate access of staff personnel to all required information. b. Set up internal arrangement IAW XO, S2/S3, and Support Operations Officers' guidance. c. Set up analog/digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays that show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the battalion's mission IAW TSOP. d. Set up analog/digital status boards. NOTE: Status boards display locations of support facilities and their capabilities and status of personnel and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Establish commander's briefing area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Prepare sleep plan that is consistent with phases of supported unit's operations. g. Establish policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. h. Set up area access and security IAW the TSOP. <p>2. S1 and S4 Sections establish administrative areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate staff access to all required information. b. Set up maps and status boards displaying status of internal logistics, personnel, and equipment. c. Establish communications nets in the order of priority specified by the S6. d. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. e. Coordinate generator electrical power with the S6. <p>3. S6 Section establishes analog and digital communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes all communications nets in order of priority specified in the TSOP and OPORD. b. Establishes area for processing incoming and outgoing messages. c. Installs local area network. d. Operates local area network. e. Issues passwords. f. Installs antivirus. g. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: STAFF SECTIONS
S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: DIRECT DEPLOYMENT ALERT ACTIVITIES (63-1-8050)
(FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a WARNO to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The movement plan/order, recall plan, security plan, and RSOP are available. The battalion's subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The battalion communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion personnel are recalled IAW the Recall Plan. Personnel are designated to staff EOC IAW RSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. S2/S3 Section/Staff Duty Officer executes alert notification procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Authenticates deployment warning order IAW RSOP. b. Notifies commander and S2/S3 that battalion has received a deployment warning order. c. Initiates recall procedures IAW commander's guidance and Recall Plan. <p>* 2. Commander and S2/S3 supervise alert and recall activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct implementation of Recall Plan, as required. b. Direct establishment of the EOC. c. Task staff sections to provide personnel for the EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. d. Monitor recall progress for compliance with RSOP. e. Designate location of EOC. <p>3. S2/S3 Section monitors progress of recall. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies time-phased present-for-duty requirements by reviewing recall plan. b. Identifies present-for-duty status by reviewing recall status reports from subordinate units. c. Calculates recall percentages IAW recall plan. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Monitors establishment of physical security of battalion HQ and subordinate unit areas by inspection and/or review of recall status reports. e. Briefs commander and S2/S3 on progress of recall. 4. Staff sections perform alert functions. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250) a. Designates personnel to staff EOC IAW RSOP. b. Briefs staff officer/section chiefs on status of recall, as required. 5. S2/S3 Section performs deployment alert activities. a. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for guidance concerning deployment requirements. b. Issues SOIs, authentication tables, operations codes, frequency and call signs to subordinate units. c. Directs units to initiate OPSEC procedures. d. Activates guard mount to control access to restricted areas, as designated. e. Sends request to S4 Section for maps, if needed. f. Establishes secure communications with higher HQ staff elements and/or installation EOC. g. Identifies liaison to higher HQ, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 STAFF SECTIONS
 S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER (63-1-8051)
 (FM 101-5) (FM 19-30)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has directed that the EOC be established. Battalion personnel have been recalled. Personnel and equipment required to establish the EOC are available. The location of the EOC has been designated. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and security plan are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The EOC is established IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time specified by the XO or S2/S3.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. XO or S2/S3 supervises establishment of the EOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies EOC requirements and layout by reviewing the RSOP and commander's guidance. b. Directs S2/S3 Section to set up EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. c. Assigns EOC work areas to staff elements. d. Directs staff sections to set up EOC work areas IAW RSOP and commander's guidance. <p>2. S2/S3 Section sets up EOC. (STP 21-II-MQS: 01-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies work areas that facilitate immediate access of personnel to all required information. b. Sets up internal arrangement of EOC IAW XO or S2/S3 guidance. c. Establishes communications and/or data processing in order of the priority specified in the movement plan/order and/or RSOP. d. Sets up maps, map overlays, informational displays, and status boards. e. Establishes areas for processing incoming and outgoing messages. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Establishes commander's work area. g. Establishes commander's briefing area. h. Prepares EOC manning schedule. i. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. j. Sets up area access and security IAW the RSOP and security plan. k. Prepares EOC access roster. l. Distributes EOC access roster IAW RSOP and security plan. m. Briefs XO or S2/S3 upon completion of the EOC setup. 3. Staff sections set up EOC work areas. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250) a. Positions equipment IAW RSOP. b. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks. c. Sets up maps and status boards displaying status of deployment operations. d. Set up briefing area for daily situation briefings. e. Briefs XO or S2/S3 when EOC is operational.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
S2/S3 SECTION
EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER

TASK: OPERATE THE EMERGENCY OPERATIONS CENTER (63-1-8052)
(FM 101-5) (FM 100-10) (FM 100-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion deployment activities have commenced. Staff journals, workbooks, current maps, overlays, the RSOP, movement plan/order, movement directive, and physical security plan are available. The EOC is required to coordinate the battalion's deployment activities. Wheeled vehicles and equipment move to the A/SPOE by convoy or rail. The EOC communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. NOTE: Unit specific FMs dictate how each unit EOC operates. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion deployment activities and information dissemination are performed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. XO or S2/S3 supervises EOC operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspects entry and exit procedures for compliance with the physical security plan. b. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned members. c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the RSOP. d. Provides briefings on current situation to the commander, as required. <p>2. EOC performs EOC deployment support duties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains staff journal(s) and entries IAW current command policy and RSOP. b. Maintains section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references. c. Maintains current maps and overlays depicting all routes and locations that affect the EOC's operation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Maintains current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily EOC and section journal entries.</p> <p>e. Submits deployment readiness reports to appropriate headquarters and installation EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance, as required.</p> <p>3. EOC monitors movement of subordinate units' equipment to A/SPOE.</p> <p>NOTE: For digitally equipped units, these actions will be performed using FBCB2, MTS, or MCS.</p> <p>a. Monitors rail loading, convoy staging and other movement activities; i.e., commercial transport arrival at airfields, for compliance with the movement order.</p> <p>b. Maintains communications with each subordinate unit IAW movement order and RSOP.</p> <p>c. Monitor SP, check point, RP, and closing reports from convoy commanders for compliance with movement order.</p> <p>d. Posts subordinate units' movement progress on the situation map.</p> <p>e. Annotates subordinate units' march progress on road movement graphs.</p> <p>f. Provides corrective actions to subordinate units when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, and route adjustments).</p> <p>g. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency.</p> <p>h. Provides current movement status of subordinate units to the S2/S3 and commander.</p> <p>i. Records closing reports from subordinate units upon receipt.</p> <p>j. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and appropriate HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: SUPERVISE BATTALION DEPLOYMENT/REDEPLOYMENT
 ACTIVITIES (63-1-8053)
 (FM 100-17) (AR 220-10) (FM 100-10)
 (FM 100-5) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The RSOP, movement plan/order, and other required documents are available. Battalion deployment/redeployment activities have commenced. The battalion is located in the home station UAA or RAA and the EOC/CP is established. The gaining overseas command has provided a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and TSOP are available. The battalion HQ communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, supporting organizations, subordinate units, and rear detachment by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment/redeployment activities are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commander directs deployment/redeployment activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies deployment/redeployment mission requirements by reviewing warning order and appropriate CONPLANS. b. Provides initial planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. c. Directs S1 to coordinate SRP processing. d. Directs personnel and equipment cross-leveling actions. e. Submits recommendations to appropriate HQ commander that selected personnel attending formal school be allowed to complete course work, if appropriate (deployment only). f. Directs recall of personnel on TDY, attending school, or in authorized leave status, if appropriate (deployment only). g. Directs S2/S3 to issue deployment/redeployment WARNO and movement plan/order. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Directs implementation of physical security and OPSEC plans. i. Briefs staff and subordinate units on deployment/redeployment mission IAW AR 220-10. j. Conducts overseas orientation IAW AR 220-10. k. Verifies subordinate commanders clear installation prior to deployment. l. Conducts periodic in-process reviews to monitor preparations for deployment, issue and exchange detailed guidance, refine movement plans, resolve issues and coordinate support for the deployment. m. Conducts liaison to higher HQ, as required. <p>* 2. XO supervises staff activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement plan/order. c. Directs staff sections to provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, e.g. advance party, MSTs, rear detachment, and etc. d. Directs staff sections to provide input for movement plan/order update. e. Formulates staff operating policies. f. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. g. Coordinates deployment/redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. h. Supervises the operations of the EOC/CP. <p>* 3. Staff officers supervise staff sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify all specified and implied tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy/redeploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANS, and commander's guidance. b. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to the deployment/redeployment with other staff sections. c. Provide information update(s) to commander and EOC/CP on areas that are critical to the deployment/redeployment mission. d. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's overseas orientation, as required. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, as required. f. Forward deployment/redeployment status reports to appropriate HQ and addressees, as required. g. Forward personnel and logistics reports IAW higher HQ guidance. <p>4. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.10-0004, O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of proficiency as prescribed in RSOP, plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP. b. Monitors external support to determine overall effectiveness, IAW RSOP. c. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units, as required. d. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance. e. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the movement plan/order and annexes, as required. <p>* 5. Commander and/or XO supervises rear detachment activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Appoints rear detachment commander. b. Approves rear detachment staffing. c. Approves rear detachment plan. d. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan. <p>6. S1 Section performs deployment activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates PAO briefings for deploying units. b. Verifies appropriate SIDPERS transactions are input for all deploying soldiers once soldiers have completed SRP processing. c. Coordinates with legal representatives on pending legal actions for deploying soldiers. d. Completes legal actions, as directed by commander. <p>7. Staff sections perform readiness activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify readiness shortfalls of subordinate units based on current USRs. b. Evaluate subordinate units' ability to perform mission requirements based on USRs and other status reports required by higher HQ, such as the CSSCS generated PERSTAT and LOGSTAT reports. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Develop plan to correct deficiencies to bring subordinate units to deployment standards. d. Back up all automated systems prior to systems being prepared for movement. e. Brief battalion commander on readiness activities and status of subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-9001.10-0004	Apply the Ethical Decision-Making Process as a Commander or Staff Officer
	03-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 STAFF SECTIONS
 S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: UPDATE MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER (63-1-8054)
 (FM 100-17) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The movement directive, SRP information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The commander has directed that the movement plan/order be updated, and the XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The commander has provided his deployment guidance and concept of operations. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The movement plan/order is updated IAW FM 101-5, the RSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. XO and S2/S3 perform a time analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculate total time remaining before deployment/redeployment commences (C-Day). b. Identify all steps in the deployment/redeployment process. c. Assign time limitation for each step in the deployment/redeployment process. d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections. 2. S2/S3 Section coordinates staffing for deployment teams. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel, equipment, and accompanying supplies for deployment, to include configuration of equipment as offered for shipment. b. Coordinates deployment team requirements with staff sections. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams into updated movement plan/order.</p> <p>3. Staff sections provide input to movement plan/order update.</p> <p>a. Identify internal mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs.</p> <p>b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing RSOP and status reports from subordinate units.</p> <p>c. Adjust preplanned requirements, as required.</p> <p>d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or installation deployment support organizations.</p> <p>e. Update appropriate staff portions of the movement plan/order, as required.</p> <p>f. Provide updated movement plan/order input to S2/S3 Section.</p> <p>4. S2/S3 Section updates movement plan/order.</p> <p>a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order with annexes.</p> <p>c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.</p> <p>NOTE: Digitally equipped units will distribute the plan/order using FBCB2 or MCS, as appropriate.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: COORDINATE SOLDIER READINESS PROGRAM PROCESSING SUPPORT (63-1-8055)

(AR 220-10)

(FM 100-17)

(FM 55-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion commander has directed SRP processing to be conducted and the overseas orientation be prepared. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The movement directive, deployment message, RSOP, and movement plan/order, maps, overlays and other required documents are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, installation deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: SRP processing support is coordinated IAW RSOP, commander's guidance, AR 220-10, and a SRP processing schedule is distributed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. S1 supervises SRP processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message. b. Approves SRP processing schedule. c. Monitors SRP processing for compliance with RSOP and SRP processing schedule. d. Coordinates adjustments to the processing schedule with the PROC CS and appropriate subordinate unit. e. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of SRP processing, as required. <p>2. S1 Section coordinates SRP processing support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies SRP processing requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, commander's guidance and AR 220-10. b. Requests staff elements and subordinate units to provide SRP processing support, as appropriate. c. Coordinates SRP processing support with the appropriate HQ. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Submits SRP processing requests and deploying personnel rosters to SRP processing support organizations IAW RSOP.</p> <p>3. S1 Section publishes SRP processing schedule.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies SRP processing date and time with installation EOC and appropriate supporting organizations. b. Prepares SRP processing schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with installation EOC and supporting organizations. c. Submits SRP processing schedule to S1 for approval or modification. d. Distributes SRP processing schedule to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units. <p>4. Staff sections prepare input to commander's overseas orientation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs. b. Identify characteristics of theater of operations that impact on unit's mission performance, e.g. topography, climate, demographics, political stability, medical threat, traditions, and customs. c. Provide commander's overseas orientation input to S2/S3 Section. <p>5. S1 Section prepares the commander's overseas orientation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies staff input for completeness. b. Prepares commander's overseas orientation briefing and supporting material. c. Forwards overseas orientation briefing material to commander or XO. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S1
 S1 SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES SUPPORT (63-1-8056)

(FM 12-6)	(AR 220-10)	(AR 230-1)
(AR 340-18 Series)	(AR 340-2)	(AR 614-185)
(AR 614-200)	(AR 640-10)	(DA Pam 600-8-1)
(DA Pam 600-8-2)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Adjustments to unit strengths and coordination for administrative support are required prior to the battalion's deployment to an overseas site. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. SRP processing has been completed. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The S1 Section continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, and deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and administrative services support is provided IAW FM 12-6, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. S1 supervises personnel readiness actions. (STP 21-II-MQS: S1-0150.00-1001) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs personnel screening IAW AR 220-10. b. Recommends to commander cross-leveling actions and disposition of personnel on TDY, attending school, in authorized leave status, and identified as nondeployable. c. Directs recall of personnel TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW commander's guidance. d. Directs cross-leveling of personnel IAW commander's guidance. e. Coordinates personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel with higher echelon S1. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Directs disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 instructions.</p> <p>g. Briefs commander and XO on personnel readiness status, as required.</p> <p>2. S1 Section performs personnel screening.</p> <p>a. Identifies officer and enlisted personnel attending service schools, TDY, and in authorized leave status.</p> <p>b. Recalls personnel TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW S1's guidance.</p> <p>c. Reports all unfilled school quotas to higher echelon S1.</p> <p>d. Identifies individual deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message.</p> <p>e. Identifies nondeployable personnel by reviewing personnel records, SRP results, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>f. Prepares deployment personnel status report.</p> <p>g. Forwards list of personnel who have completed the SRP process to S1.</p> <p>h. Briefs S1 on battalion deployment personnel status.</p> <p>3. S1 Section performs cross-leveling of personnel.</p> <p>a. Identifies personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification by reviewing personnel status reports.</p> <p>b. Verifies personnel overages and shortages by reviewing subordinate units' personnel status reports.</p> <p>c. Redistributes personnel within the battalion based on S1 and commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Transfers nondeployable personnel as directed by higher HQ.</p> <p>e. Recalculates personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification.</p> <p>f. Updates SIDPERS records, as required.</p> <p>4. S1 Section performs personnel disposition functions.</p> <p>a. Forwards copies of movement directive to school commandant(s) for personnel who will join unit in theater upon completion of school.</p> <p>b. Requests disposition instructions for excess and nondeployable personnel from higher echelon S1 Section.</p> <p>c. Reassigns excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Clears unavailable, nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions.</p> <p>5. S1 Section performs personnel replacement functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits officer requisitions IAW AR 614-185. b. Submits enlisted requisitions IAW AR 614-200. c. Assigns filler personnel IAW AR 614-185, AR 614-200, and S1 guidance. <p>6. S1 Section provides personnel services support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel service requirements by reviewing the movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, and RSOP. b. Submits requests for personnel services support from the higher echelon S1, as required. c. Coordinates postal support with supporting AG. d. Coordinates for recreational equipment and services with the installation Recreational Services Officer. e. Coordinates Red Cross support with the local ARC office. f. Coordinates religious support with installation chaplain. g. Coordinates press and home town news releases with the installation PAO. h. Coordinates disposition of POV and storage of personal property with PMO. i. Appoints subordinate unit Class A agents on battalion orders, as required. j. Closes out unit funds IAW AR 230-1 and the RSOP. k. Provides personnel services input for the movement plan/order to the S2/S3 Section. <p>7. S1 Section provides records management support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel records to accompany unit to theater of operations IAW AR 340-2. b. Identifies records to be transferred to records holding area. c. Directs units to prepare and maintain abbreviated records IAW AR 640-10. d. Provides records management input for the rear detachment plan to the S2/S3 Section. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	S1-0150.00-1001	Monitor the Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions - FLAG

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S1
S1 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE FAMILY ASSISTANCE SUPPORT (63-1-8057)
(FM 100-17) (AR 608-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for family assistance are received from subordinate units and individual families. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The family assistance plan, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the ITO and installation support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Family assistance support is coordinated and the updated family assistance plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. S1 supervises family assistance support activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: S3-0320.00-0011)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Appoints Family Assistance Officer(s), as required. b. Approves updated family assistance plan. c. Monitors family assistance briefings and activities for compliance with the family assistance plan and commander's guidance. d. Briefs commander, XO, subordinate unit commanders, and rear detachment commander on family assistance requirements and availability of support. <p>2. S1 Section coordinates family assistance support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies family assistance support requirements by reviewing RSOP, subordinate unit reports, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates family assistance requirements with staff sections. c. Coordinates for input into the family assistance plan update with staff sections. d. Coordinates family assistance support, e.g., ACS, AER, SJA, and Red Cross, with installation agencies. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Coordinates with the Chief of ACS to conduct or participate in family support briefings IAW installation deployment plan.</p> <p>f. Briefs the S1 on family assistance requirements and available support.</p> <p>3. S1 Section updates family assistance plan.</p> <p>a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Prepares updated copy of family assistance plan.</p> <p>c. Forwards draft copy to S1 for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Distributes updated family assistance plan IAW RSOP.</p> <p>4. S1 Section provides support to families.</p> <p>a. Establishes family assistance briefing site and schedules.</p> <p>b. Prepares family assistance information packet detailing available support.</p> <p>c. Conducts family assistance briefings IAW briefing schedule.</p> <p>d. Provides family assistance information packet to families.</p> <p>e. Refers personnel requiring assistance to appropriate agencies.</p> <p>5. Battalion FSG representatives perform family assistance activities.</p> <p>a. Communicate with all unit level representatives at least once every week during deployment.</p> <p>b. Conduct battalion FSG meetings with unit level representatives to address family member concerns.</p> <p>c. Disseminate information through FSG channels.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	S3-0320.00-0011	Describe Elements of Army Family Programs

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S2/S3
S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE DEPLOYMENT TRAINING SUPPORT (63-1-8058)
(FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Training deficiencies exist within the battalion. Training is required before the battalion deploys to an overseas site. Training status reports are being received from subordinate units. The movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordination for deployment training support is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. S2/S3 supervises deployment training.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies training requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, subordinate unit training reports, and commander's guidance. b. Provides guidance on training requirements and priorities. c. Approves training schedule. d. Monitors training for compliance with training schedule and commander's guidance. e. Coordinates adjustments to the training schedule with appropriate subordinate unit commanders and/or agencies providing training support, as required. f. Verifies personnel have completed training by reviewing subordinate units training reports. g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of training, as required. <p>2. S2/S3 Section publishes deployment training schedule.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for training support with battalion staff and subordinate units, as required. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Submits training support requests to appropriate installation support agencies IAW RSOP and S2/S3's guidance. c. Prepares training schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with supporting organizations. d. Submits training schedule to S2/S3 for approval or modification. e. Distributes training schedule to appropriate staff sections and subordinate units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: PERFORM DEPLOYMENT INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT FUNCTIONS (63-1-8059)

- (FM 34-1) (AR 190-13) (AR 350-1)
- (AR 380-15) (AR 380-5) (FM 100-10)
- (FM 34-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The OPSEC Plan, Physical Security Plan, SOI/SSI, movement directive, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to subordinate units and intelligence support functions are accomplished IAW higher echelon S2 instructions, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. S2/S3 Section implements physical security procedures. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0002)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designates the EOC as a restricted area. b. Provides access roster of personnel authorized access to restricted areas. c. Provides list of authorized classified document couriers, security managers, custodians, and alternates to appropriate HQ. d. Provides a list of area physical security actions taken to appropriate HQ. e. Monitors physical security activities for compliance with Physical Security Plan, RSOP, and commander's guidance. <p>2. S2/S3 Section implements commander's OPSEC program. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250, O3-3711.12-0001)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Conducts OPSEC analysis to identify OPSEC requirements.</p> <p>b. Updates OPSEC Plan based on analysis.</p> <p>c. Implements the OPSEC Plan.</p> <p>d. Provides feedback on status of OPSEC program to commander and subordinate units.</p> <p>e. Provides OPSEC input to appropriate orders and plans.</p> <p>f. Coordinates for an OPSEC sweep of battalion HQ and subordinate units with installation MI detachment.</p> <p>g. Conducts OPSEC briefings, as required.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section provides classified documents and map services. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0002)</p> <p>a. Identifies classified documents and map requirements by reviewing requests from subordinate units, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Submits request for classified maps to the higher HQ S2 Section.</p> <p>c. Submits requisitions for classified documents through appropriate channels.</p> <p>d. Distributes classified documents and maps to staff and subordinate units, as appropriate.</p> <p>e. Requests disposition instructions for classified documents not required from higher echelon S2.</p> <p>f. Publishes policies and procedures for transfer of classified documents IAW higher echelon S2 instructions.</p> <p>g. Maintains accountability of classified documents IAW AR 380-5.</p> <p>4. S2/S3 Section performs personnel security functions.</p> <p>a. Identifies security clearance requirements by reviewing RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Verifies security clearance of deploying soldiers.</p> <p>c. Submits request for security clearances to higher echelon S2/S3.</p> <p>d. Provides instructions to subordinate units on the removal of unit patches, badges, and unit insignia on clothing and equipment.</p> <p>5. S2/S3 Section implements SIGSEC procedures. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Provides SIGSEC guidance to staff and subordinate units. b. Monitors all methods of unit communications for compliance with SOI/SSI and RSOP. c. Briefs the S2/S3 on SIGSEC activities. 6. S2/S3 Section provides intelligence briefings on theater of operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250, S3-8988.01-0001, S3-9014.02-0010) a. Coordinates with commander to identify commander's information requirements. b. Requests current intelligence and background information on the theater of operations from higher echelon S2. c. Conducts analysis of theater of operations by reviewing deployment OPLAN/OPORD and appropriate publications. d. Develops intelligence briefing on theater of operations. e. Submits briefing to S2/S3 for approval or modification. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate units on characteristics of the theater of operations and potential impact on support operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct
	O3-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	O3-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material
	S3-8988.01-0001	Describe Regional and Special Threats

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References

Task Number

Task Title

S3-9014.02-0010

Describe the Army's Combating
Terrorism Program for Deployable
Units

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S4
S4 SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE DEPLOYMENT LOGISTICS SUPPORT (63-1-8060)

(FM 100-17)

(AR 220-1)

(AR 710-2)

(AR 710-3)

(DA Pam 710-2-2)

(FM 100-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment WARNO and the commander has issued his guidance. The movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, RSOP, port call messages, subordinate unit AUELs, and OPLAN/CONPLAN, annexes are available. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. Equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, automation means and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment logistics support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for requisitioning, issue or cross-leveling of vehicles, supplies and equipment is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. S4 supervises deployment logistics support activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies logistics requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and subordinate unit supply, maintenance, and movement status reports. b. Recommends cross-leveling actions to the commander. c. Directs cross-leveling of supplies and equipment IAW commander's guidance. d. Directs disposition of excess supplies and equipment IAW higher echelon S4 instructions. e. Prioritizes equipment requiring support maintenance IAW commander's guidance. f. Submits request to higher HQ staff element for activation of additional UICs for deploying elements, as needed. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Monitors supply and maintenance activities for compliance with movement SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. h. Monitors movement preparation activities for compliance with RSOP, MOBPLANs (RC), movement plans, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. i. Directs units to turn in keys to unit buildings and areas to rear detachment commander prior to main body departing. j. Briefs commander and XO on logistics readiness status, as required. k. Obtains deployment project code to facilitate rapid supply actions. <p>2. S4 Section provides supply and services support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies special equipment and/or clothing requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, and OPLAN/CONPLAN. b. Coordinates issue of special equipment and/or clothing with higher echelon S4, installation DOL, and appropriate supporting agencies. c. Coordinates emergency calibration of deploying equipment. d. Updates supply requisitions with correct FAD, deployment UICs and deployment ship to address, as needed. e. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a deployment address. f. Coordinates disposition of excess equipment and clothing with higher echelon S4 and/or installation DOL. g. Submits requisitions for containers, MHE, blocking, bracing, and packing materials to appropriate supporting agencies IAW RSOP. h. Provides disposition instructions for excess equipment and clothing to subordinate units. i. Coordinates pick-up of basic and prescribed loads with higher echelon S4 Section or installation DOL. j. Provides instruction for pick-up of basic and prescribed loads to subordinate units. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>k. Coordinates POL support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL.</p> <p>l. Monitors the preparation of basic and prescribed loads for compliance with RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>m. Briefs S4, as required.</p> <p>3. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <p>a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports.</p> <p>b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section.</p> <p>d. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section.</p> <p>e. Verifies all equipment transactions have been completed and equipment is properly signed for by reviewing property book and unit hand receipts.</p> <p>f. Updates property book, as required.</p> <p>g. Briefs S4, as required.</p> <p>4. S4 Section provides maintenance support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <p>a. Identifies maintenance requirements by reviewing RSOP, status reports from subordinate units, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Provides MST support to subordinate units, as required.</p> <p>c. Coordinates for MST, status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance, disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support with supporting maintenance activity</p> <p>d. Provides instructions on the disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support to subordinate units.</p> <p>e. Coordinates maintenance support at the A/SPOE MA with supporting installation.</p> <p>f. Submits vehicles and equipment to support maintenance IAW S4 instructions.</p> <p>g. Coordinates maintenance support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Briefs S4, as required.</p> <p>5. S4 Section provides movement support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-7200.75-0100, O1-7300.75-0500, O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and subordinate unit AUELs. b. Verifies that subordinate unit personnel and equipment transportation requirements have been submitted and are accurate by coordinating with UMC. c. Provides movement and documentation assistance to subordinate unit UMOs, as required. d. Requests scales and MHE support from DOL, as required and reviewing DEL. e. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and movement schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC. f. Coordinates convoy clearances and special hauling permits with the IC-UMO, as required. g. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity. h. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with the UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled. i. Coordinates for return transportation support for battalion personnel from the SPOE to battalion area with UMC. j. Coordinates advance party and main body personnel transportation requirements to the APOE with appropriate HQ. k. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary. l. Briefs S4, as required. <p>* 6. ICUMO coordinates SPOE MA activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors staging and processing of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement order, call forward instructions, and supporting installation officials' instructions. b. Resolves vehicle and equipment processing deficiencies by coordinating with supporting installation officials. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Coordinates disposition of frustrated vehicles and cargo with supporting installation personnel. d. Verifies arrangement for supercargoes by coordinating with port commander's representatives. e. Briefs S4, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-7200.75-0100	Conduct Convoy Operations
	O1-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations
	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: BATTALION
S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: PERFORM DEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES (63-1-8061)
(FM 100-17) (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a movement WARNO for deployment. Subordinate units provide personnel and equipment for the advance party. The movement plan/order, RSOP, advance party plan, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Logistics and movement support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation and MTMC, respectively. Theater logistics support is provided to the advance party by the combatant commander's designated support organization. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section plans advance party operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: 01-9007.01-0250) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Updates advance party plan IAW commander's guidance. c. Coordinates personnel and equipment for the advance party with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan. d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations. * 2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party predeployment activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: 01-9007.01-0250) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/S3 and commander's guidance. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with S4 Section. c. Coordinates for movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO. d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order, subordinate unit DELs, and CONPLAN/OPLANs. e. Identifies planned operational locations and mission support requirements by reviewing CONPLAN/OPLANs. f. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/S3. g. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required. <p>3. Advance party deploys through APOE to APOD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares vehicles for air movement. b. Deploys IAW movement order. c. Performs APOD activities for deployment. <p>4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for arrival schedule and reception of the main body with AACG. b. Coordinates for movement of personnel to marshaling area with PMCT. c. Coordinate for ship arrival schedule and movement of equipment to TSB with PSA. d. Provides personnel to port commander for movement of equipment from PSA to marshaling area, as required. e. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to PMCT. f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with designated supporting organization. g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required. <p>5. Advance party coordinates mission operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to appropriate HQ. b. Coordinates for current operational and tactical situation with higher echelon Support Operations Section and S2/S3. c. Identifies preliminary liaison requirements with supporting and supported activities. d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on operational and tactical situation, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	01-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION

- S4
- S1 SECTION
- S2/S3 SECTION
- S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE ONWARD MOVEMENT (63-1-8062)
 (FM 100-17) (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate unit main bodies have arrived at the APOD. The Advance Party OIC has briefed the commander and staff on the support available in the marshaling/staging area. The PSA moves the battalion's vehicles and equipment from the SPOD to the marshaling/staging area. Administrative and logistics support is provided by an organization designated by the combatant commander. Movement control element provides movement instructions from the TSB to the TAA. The RSOP and TSOP are available. Movement control element monitors battalion's movement to the TAA. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The main body arrives in the TAA IAW movement control element instructions and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Command Section supervises onward movement activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for tactical situation and future support operation information with higher echelon staff. b. Provides staff sections guidance on intransit support requirements and onward movement priorities. c. Establishes liaison with supporting organizations that are providing intransit support and movement instructions. d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as required. 2. S2/S3 Section supervises preparation and movement to TAA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates staff input for intransit support and movement instructions. b. Issues movement order/FRAGO and maps IAW commander's guidance. c. Monitors subordinate unit preparation for convoy operations for compliance with movement order/FRAGO. d. Monitors movement of unit. e. Forwards SP crossing reports, check point times and closing reports to supporting movement control element. f. Reports arrival in TAA to higher echelon S2/S3 Section. <p>3. S1 Section coordinates intransit support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates administrative and personnel services support with designated support unit, as required. b. Coordinates medical support with designated medical support unit, as required. c. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support. <p>4. S4 Section coordinates marshaling/staging area logistics support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates field feeding and logistics support with designated support unit, as required. b. Provides instructions to subordinate units on inventory, inspection, and property transfer and accountability procedures. c. Identifies maintenance and repair parts requirements by monitoring subordinate unit maintenance status reports. d. Coordinates maintenance and repair parts support with designated support unit, as required. e. Provides instructions to subordinate units on drawing weapons, fuel, ammunition, and supplies required for movement to TAA. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support. <p>* 5. S4 coordinates movement to TAA. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for detailed movement instructions with supporting movement control element. b. Provides movement instructions to S2/S3 Section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Monitors supporting units AUDEL updates for compliance with FM 55-65, movement order, and RSOP. d. Monitors vehicle preparation and rail loading operations for compliance with movement instructions, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. e. Monitors preparation of movement documentation for compliance with appropriate publications and MCA/MCT instructions. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders/UMOs on movement, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE REAR DETACHMENT SUPPORT (63-1-8063)
 (FM 100-17) (AR 230-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Rear detachment support is required. All subordinate units are deploying/redeploying as part of the battalion deployment/redeployment. The rear detachment plan, RSOP, and deployment/redeployment movement plan/order are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation or theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment support is coordinated and the updated rear detachment plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section coordinates rear detachment personnel and administrative services support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel and administrative services support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates rear detachment staffing requirements with staff sections and subordinate unit commanders. c. Forwards recommendations for rear detachment staffing to commander for approval. d. Coordinates personnel and administrative services support with higher echelon S1 Section or installation/theater support organizations, as required. e. Provides personnel and administrative services support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/S3 Section. f. Coordinates family support group assistance with higher echelon S1. g. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on personnel and administrative services support, as required. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. S4 Section coordinates for rear detachment logistics support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies logistics support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, rear detachment plan, and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates logistics support with higher echelon S4 Section or installation/theater support organizations. c. Provides copies of property book, document register, and related documentation to the rear detachment commander, as required. d. Provides logistics support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/S3 Section. e. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on rear detachment logistics support, as required. <p>3. S2/S3 Section updates rear detachment plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares updated copy of rear detachment plan. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes rear detachment plan update IAW RSOP. <p>4. S2/S3 Section provides rear detachment support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requests new classified document access roster and safe access listing for the rear detachment from higher HQ staff element. b. Coordinates changing of combinations for safes and arms room for the rear detachment with higher HQ staff element. c. Assists rear detachment to ensure all classified material not deployed with unit is properly stored, transferred or destroyed. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: REAR DETACHMENT
BATTALION**

TASK: PERFORM HOME STATION REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES (63-1-8064)

(FM 100-17)

(FM 12-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate units' main bodies are preparing to depart home station. Initial coordination for personnel and administrative services and logistics support was accomplished by staff. Subordinate units have delivered records and files designated by the S1 to the rear detachment. Dependents have been briefed on the availability of support from the installation and rear detachment. The RSOP, movement plan/order, family assistance plan, and rear detachment plan are available. The rear detachment receives home station reception requirements from S2/S3 Section. The rear detachment continuously receives messages from the installation and higher echelon HQ by telephone and electronic means. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment activities are performed IAW the rear detachment plan and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Rear detachment commander supervises rear detachment activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies rear detachment requirements, policies, and procedures by reviewing the rear detachment plan, family assistance plan, and commander's guidance. b. Conducts inventory and signs for all installation property and equipment transferred into rear detachment from deploying units. c. Publishes a chain of command based on commander's guidance. d. Develops rear detachment program to provide service to soldiers and family remaining in rear. e. Briefs rear detachment personnel on rear detachment plan and command policies. f. Verifies availability of personnel and administrative services and logistics support by coordinating with the installation AG and DOL. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Briefs rear detachment personnel on available personnel and administrative services and logistics support. h. Monitors family support group activities for compliance with family assistance plan. i. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan. <p>2. Rear detachment provides administrative and logistics support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates SRP processing of late arrivals and/or replacement personnel with the installation AG. b. Provides administrative and logistics support to late arrivals and/or replacement personnel IAW rear detachment plan. c. Redirects mail IAW rear detachment plan. d. Maintains records and files IAW rear detachment plan and appropriate publications. e. Provides assistance to families IAW the family assistance plan, as required. f. Publishes family support chain of command roster for family member. g. Coordinates reassignment of rear detachment personnel with the installation AG. h. Coordinates inspection and disposition of real property with supporting installation agency, as necessary. i. Conducts physical security inspections of facilities and storage areas. j. Reports damage to facilities and storage areas to PMO and installation engineers. <p>3. Rear detachment commander coordinates reception at home station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing the RSOP and S2/S3 Section instructions. b. Verifies availability of transportation and intransit support by coordinating with the ITO. c. Identifies planned welcoming ceremonies by coordinating with installation support activities and PAO. d. Coordinates for transportation of dependents to the APOD with ITO, as required. e. Notifies dependents of transportation and reception plans. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Provides S2/S3 Section information on transportation, intransit support, and welcoming ceremonies.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	01-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE RECONSTITUTION FOR REDEPLOYMENT (63-1-8065)
(FM 100-17) (FM 100-10) (FM 100-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment warning order and the commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the designated AA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. The RSOP and redeployment warning order are available. NOTE: The TAA and RAA may be combined, depending on the size of the theater and the combatant commander's guidance. The redeployment sequence is based on theater constraints and CINC's guidance. Intermediate steps and actions may be required to supplement TAA and RAA movement, to include further defining RAA activities by establishing a final staging area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reconstitution for redeployment is coordinated IAW RSOP and commander's guidance and FM 100-9.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section coordinates cross-leveling of personnel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS by reviewing subordinate unit's status reports. b. Reassigns personnel within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS. d. Submits personnel requisitions to higher echelon S1 Section. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess personnel from higher echelon S1 Section. f. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Reassigns excess personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions. h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on personnel status, as required. <p>2. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports. b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates shortages and overages. d. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section. f. Issues vehicles, equipment, and supplies IAW commander and S4's guidance. g. Provides subordinate units disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies. h. Updates property book, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and supplies, as required. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: STAFF SECTIONS
S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: PREPARE REDEPLOYMENT MOVEMENT PLAN/ORDER (63-1-8066)
 (FM 100-17) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his redeployment guidance and directed that the redeployment movement plan/order be prepared. The XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the redeployment movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. Trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4 and/or ICUMO. The home station rear detachment commander provides information on reception arrangements. The RSOP, TSOP, and higher echelon redeployment movement order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment movement plan/order is prepared and distributed IAW FM 101-5, the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Staff sections provide input to the redeployment movement plan/order. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify redeployment requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOPs, and commander's guidance. b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and status reports from subordinate units. c. Identify internal support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and commander's guidance. d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or redeployment support organizations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Forward redeployment movement plan/order input information to S2/S3 Section.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section coordinates staffing for redeployment teams.</p> <p>a. Identifies personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Coordinates redeployment teams requirements with staff sections.</p> <p>c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams into movement plan/order.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section coordinates TAA and RAA physical security requirements.</p> <p>a. Identifies TAA and RAA physical security requirements by reviewing TSOP, higher echelon redeployment movement order, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Coordinates physical security support with higher echelon S2/S3 or supporting logistics support organization.</p> <p>c. Coordinates physical security requirements with subordinate units.</p> <p>d. Incorporates TAA and RAA physical security instructions into movement plan/order.</p> <p>4. S2/S3 Section coordinates reception at home station.</p> <p>a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Forwards reception requirements and projected personnel movement schedules to home station rear detachment commander.</p> <p>c. Incorporates planned reception arrangements into the movement plan/order.</p> <p>5. S2/S3 Section prepares movement plan/order.</p> <p>a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order.</p> <p>c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Digitally equipped units will distribute the plan/order using FBCB2 or MCS, as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S1 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE REDEPLOYMENT SUPPORT (63-1-8067)
 (FM 100-17) (FM 100-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA and trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4. The battalion commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and higher echelon redeployment movement orders, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body deploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for movement of personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the A/SPOE is accomplished IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section provides personnel and administrative services support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-0170.01-1005) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies personnel and administrative requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Establishes redeployment personnel processing procedures IAW higher echelon guidance. c. Coordinates reassignment of personnel redeploying as individuals with higher echelon S1. d. Provides personnel service support, as required. e. Provides administrative support, as required. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Verifies personnel and finance records have been updated by reviewing subordinate unit records.</p> <p>g. Verifies line of duty investigations have been completed prior to redeployment.</p> <p>h. Processes personnel actions, to include evaluation reports and decorations and awards.</p> <p>i. Coordinates (theater) rear detachment personnel and administrative services support with higher echelon S1.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section coordinates training requirements.</p> <p>a. Identifies training requirements, e.g. weighing and marking, customs inspections, cleaning of vehicles and equipment, and documentation requirements, by reviewing appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Coordinates redeployment training support with higher echelon S2/S3.</p> <p>c. Notifies subordinate units of scheduled training events.</p> <p>d. Monitors scheduled training events for compliance with appropriate publications and commander's guidance.</p> <p>e. Updates training records, as required.</p> <p>3. S4 Section coordinates supply and services support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-5105.00-0002, O3-8310.00-9000)</p> <p>a. Identifies supply and services support requirements.</p> <p>b. Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports.</p> <p>c. Identifies supplies due-in by reviewing document registers.</p> <p>d. Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in.</p> <p>e. Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess.</p> <p>f. Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with DS supply organization.</p> <p>g. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a redeployment address ten days prior to redeployment.</p> <p>h. Submits request to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed to higher echelon S4 or supporting supply activity, as needed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit, as required. j. Designates date/time when internal supply and service support terminates. k. Provides copies of the unit hand receipts and related documentation to OIC of the (theater) rear detachment, as required. l. Coordinates supply and service support for main body and (theater) rear detachment during movement with higher echelon S4. <p>4. S4 Section coordinates maintenance support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate unit and battalion maintenance status reports. c. Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with battalion and DS maintenance organizations. d. Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment from higher echelon S4. e. Tasks battalion maintenance section to provide MST support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movement. f. Designates date/time when organizational maintenance support terminates. g. Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond unit's capability with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization. h. Coordinates vehicle cleaning and support with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization. <p>* 5. ICUMO coordinates redeployment movement. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies redeployment movement requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. b. Verifies UMD and movement schedules, routes, and location of RAA and staging areas by coordinating with MCA/MCT. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Develops milestones for planning, packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. d. Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with higher echelon S4. e. Monitors supporting units AUDEL updates for compliance with redeployment movement order, and RSOP. f. Monitors subordinate units' preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order, RSOP, and appropriate publications. g. Monitors supporting units' vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, RSOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. h. Monitors subordinate units' customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications. i. Monitors subordinate units' movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. j. Inspects subordinate units' movement plans/orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance. k. Briefs commander and/or staff on movement readiness status, as required. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct
	O3-0170.01-1005	Perform Wartime Strength Accounting at Unit Level
	O3-5105.00-0002	Direct Field Feeding Operations
	O3-8310.00-9000	Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine and Field Sanitation Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: PERFORM REDEPLOYMENT ADVANCE PARTY ACTIVITIES (63-1-8068)

(FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. All subordinate units are redeploying as part of the battalion redeployment. The movement plan/order, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the redeploying support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, electronic means, and courier. CONUS logistics support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. S2/S3 Section plans advance party operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance. b. Prepares advance party plan IAW commander's guidance. c. Coordinates advance party personnel and equipment requirements with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan. d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations. <p>* 2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party premovement activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/S3 and commander's guidance. b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with the S4 Section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Coordinates for advance party movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO. d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order, and subordinate unit DELs. e. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/S3. f. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required. <p>3. Advance party moves through APOE to APOD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares vehicles for air movement, as required. b. Deploys IAW movement order. c. Performs APOD activities for redeployment. <p>4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates main body arrival schedule and reception with AACG. b. Coordinates inspection and processing procedures with USCS and USDA officials. c. Coordinates for movement of personnel to home station with MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives. d. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to MTMC representatives, supporting installation representatives, and home station UMC. e. Completes required movement documentation ICW MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives. f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with supporting installation, as required. g. Assists home station rear detachment with final coordination for welcome home reception activities. h. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: BATTALION
REAR DETACHMENT**

**TASK: PERFORM THEATER REAR DETACHMENT ACTIVITIES (63-1-8069)
(FM 100-17)**

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate units main bodies have redeployed. The rear detachment is located in the RAA with the battalion's vehicles and equipment. Vehicles and equipment are prepared for strategic sea movement and are waiting to be called forward to PSA SA. S4 has provided copies of the unit hand receipts, document register, and related documents. MCA/MCT provides call forward instructions to the A/SPOE. The RSOP, TSOP, redeployment movement order, and (theater) rear detachment plan are available. The (theater) rear detachment continuously receives messages from the theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and battalion HQ by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit's vehicles and equipment are transferred to the PSA and (theater) rear detachment personnel redeploy to home station IAW the (theater) rear detachment plan and redeployment movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. (Theater) rear detachment commander supervises (theater) rear detachment activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250, O3-5101.00-0281, O3-5101.00-0282, O3-8310.00-9000, O3-9003.03-0001)</p> <p>a. Identifies operational and support requirements by reviewing (theater) rear detachment plan; redeployment movement order; and S1, S4, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Verifies availability of personnel services, administrative services, and logistics support by coordinating with supporting organizations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Develops an inspection and maintenance schedule IAW (theater) rear detachment plan. d. Monitors levels of personnel, administrative, and logistics support to ensure appropriate levels of support are provided. e. Directs correction of deficiencies noted during USCS and/or USDA inspections. f. Inspects movement and property accountability documentation to verify accuracy IAW (theater) rear detachment plan and appropriate publications. g. Forwards (theater) rear detachment status reports to battalion HQ, as required. h. Briefs commander and/or staff of supporting logistics support organization on (theater) rear detachment activities, as required. <p>2. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates logistics support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies repair parts requirements by reviewing maintenance inspection reports and the document register. b. Identifies supply requirements by conducting inventory of supplies on-hand. c. Forwards requisitions for required supplies and repair parts to supporting logistics support organization. d. Coordinates receipt of supplies and repair parts with the supporting logistics support organization. e. Coordinates field feeding and billeting support with the supporting logistics support organization. <p>3. (Theater) rear detachment maintains vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspects vehicles and equipment IAW inspection and maintenance schedule. b. Prepares requisitions for repair parts, as required. c. Performs operator and organizational maintenance, as required. d. Coordinates MST support with supporting logistics support organization. e. Cleans vehicles to meet USDA requirements. <p>4. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates processing of vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE with TMCA/PMCT and PSA. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinates redeployment of personnel and processing procedures with TMCA/PMCT and DACG. c. Monitors customs and USDA inspections for compliance with the redeployment movement order and appropriate publications. d. Monitors joint PSA inspection to ensure vehicles and equipment meet requirements for strategic sealift. e. Processes vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE. f. Redeploys personnel IAW TMCA/PMCT and DACG instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct
	O3-5101.00-0281	Direct the Preparation and Maintenance of Unit Supply Records
	O3-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition
	O3-8310.00-9000	Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine and Field Sanitation Procedures
	O3-9003.03-0001	Supervise the Management of Accident Risk in Unit Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE HOME STATION ACTIVITIES (63-1-8070)
 (FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has arrived at home station. Main body arrives at home station prior to equipment arrival at SPOD. The battalion receives notification of ship and (theater) rear detachment arrival from the ITO. The maintenance SOP and RSOP are available. The ITO provides movement instructions and convoy clearances. The supporting installation provides intransit logistics support. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation agencies and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Home station activities are accomplished IAW commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commander directs post deployment activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs preparation of after-action reports. b. Directs inventory and cleaning of vehicles, equipment, and weapons. c. Directs turn-in of hand-receipted and float equipment. d. Approves after-action report. e. Briefs appropriate HQ commander and staff on operations in theater of operations. 2. S1 Section performs post deployment activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates personal affairs briefings, such as family and stress briefings. b. Verifies records of deployed soldiers have been updated with deployment information and appropriate personnel actions. c. Processes SIDPERS transactions for redeploying soldiers, if required. d. Coordinates welcome home activities for (theater) rear detachment personnel. <p>3. S4 Section coordinates reception of rear detachment. (STP 21-II-MQS: 01-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates transportation support for (theater) rear detachment personnel with ITO. b. Verifies arrival schedule and processing requirements by coordinating with AACG. c. Resolves inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with MTMC, USCS, and USDA officials. d. Briefs commander and XO on status of rear detachment reception. <p>4. S4 Section coordinates reception of equipment at SPOE. (STP 21-II-MQS: 01-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, redeployment movement order, and subordinate unit DELs. b. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC. c. Coordinates for convoy clearances with the UMC, as required. d. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity. e. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled. f. Coordinates transportation support for battalion personnel to the SPOD with the UMC. g. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary. <p>* 5. IC-UMO coordinates SPOD MA activities.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: Digitally equipped units will provide reports using FBCB2 or MCS, as appropriate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors inventory, inspection, processing, and staging of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement instructions; convoy clearances; and MTMC and PSA officials' instructions. b. Resolves vehicle and equipment inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with PSA, USCS, and USDA officials. c. Coordinates disposition of nonoperational vehicles with supporting installation personnel. d. Reports SPOD status by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate. e. Provides SP crossing report by telephone or radio to S2/S3 Section, as appropriate. <p>6. S4 Section monitors stand-down of vehicles, equipment, and weapons. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors inventory and maintenance status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons for compliance with maintenance SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. b. Provides vehicle and equipment technical inspection and excess equipment instructions to subordinate units. c. Monitors vehicle and equipment turn-in for compliance with appropriate publications and S4 instructions. d. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons. <p>7. S2/S3 Section drafts after-action report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies staff and subordinate unit input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares after-action report. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes after-action report IAW commander's guidance. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	01-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: DIRECT INTEGRATION ACTIVITIES (63-1-8071)
 (FM 100-17) (FM 55-65)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is in the process of deploying following receipt of an OPORD. The unit has arrived at the POD, moved through the designated marshaling area/staging site, and has closed in the TAA. Prior to onward movement from the staging area, the unit verified that it met mission readiness criteria. The unit initiates command and control procedures with the gaining command. The unit security plan, unit access rosters, TSOP and current maps are available. The unit is deploying as part of a higher echelon deployment. Integration activities are performed day or night under all environmental conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and equipment are combat ready and integrated into the operational mission of the gaining tactical force commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commander supervises integration activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directs TOC to be established IAW TSOP. b. Directs analog and digital communications link-up into gaining command net. c. Directs Unit HQ to integrate unit security plan into gaining command's operational force protection measure. d. Directs Unit HQ to integrate into the gaining command's CSS system. e. Directs Unit HQ to submit reports IAW gaining command SOPs/OPLANs. f. Provides guidance to staff on corrective actions based on readiness reports from subordinate units. g. Releases consolidated battalion readiness report to higher HQ. 2. S2/S3 Section completes integration actions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enters tactical analog and digital communication nets. b. Establishes battalion TOC. c. Integrates unit into TAA security plan. d. Directs stationing of subordinate units within assigned area. e. Clarifies operational mission parameters with gaining command. f. Assists subordinate units in correcting readiness deficiencies. g. Submits required reports to gaining command. h. Conducts training as directed by gaining command. <p>3. S1 Section performs integration activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Submits consolidated personnel status report to higher HQ. b. Monitors status of soldiers with a special status, such as sick or injured. c. Requests replacements, as needed. d. Coordinates medical, personnel, religious, MWR, and finance support. <p>4. S4 Section performs integration activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes direct support relationships with various support elements in the support structure to include supply, field services, automation maintenance and maintenance. b. Provides subordinate units CSS support information, to include location of supply and maintenance points, field service support information, and procedures for resupply. c. Submits logistics status report in format directed by gaining command. <p>5. S6 Section performs information technology integration activities for radio and tactical automation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes direct support relationship with gaining command for COMSEC and system/software security materiel. b. Installs, operates, and maintains local area networks. c. Establishes and operates battalion NCS. d. Ensures analog and digital communications linkup with higher, adjacent, and supported commands. e. Selects signal sites and provides advice on interference problems. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT IN A PEACETIME ENVIRONMENT
(63-1-8072)
(FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The higher HQ is operating in a normal peacetime environment at a normal state of readiness. The unit has a wartime mission with a corresponding OPLAN on file. Unit is conducting operational mission and METL training. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP, security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. The OPLAN calls for higher HQ's subordinate units to deploy as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Peacetime deployment planning activities are performed day or night under all environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plan are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

NOTE: MOBPLANS are required only for RC units. RC-specific task steps and performance measures are annotated "(RC)".

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Commander directs deployment planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. b. Directs S2/S3 to update OPLAN c. Directs S2/S3 to validate MOBPLAN (RC). d. Directs S2/S3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans. e. Directs security officer to update security plan. f. Directs XO to update RSOP and TSOP. g. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities. <p>* 2. XO coordinates staff planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement/deployment plans.</p> <p>c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.</p> <p>d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.</p> <p>e. Coordinates update of RSOP and TSOP.</p> <p>f. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section analyzes mission.</p> <p>a. Identifies specified and implied tasks in the OPLAN.</p> <p>b. Identifies documented policies and procedures.</p> <p>c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of missions</p> <p>f. Updates higher HQ OPLAN.</p> <p>g. Maintains current maps and overlays for all missions for subordinate units.</p> <p>h. Approves MOBPLANs (RC) for subordinate units.</p> <p>i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.</p> <p>4. Staff conducts readiness review of subordinate units.</p> <p>a. Provides personnel readiness review.</p> <p>b. Performs logistics readiness review.</p> <p>c. Performs OPSEC readiness review.</p> <p>d. Identifies readiness issues.</p> <p>e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness.</p> <p>f. Updates higher HQ RSOP and TSOP.</p> <p>g. Coordinates with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC).</p> <p>5. S2/S3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC).</p> <p>a. Verifies mission is current.</p> <p>b. Updates MOBPLAN.</p> <p>c. Confirms annex information is correct.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan.</p> <p>NOTE: MOBPLAN is updates annually, or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure.</p> <p>6. S4 Section validates deployment plans.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains movement plans for all modes of transportation for the higher HQ. b. Validates equipment status. c. Validates AUDEL for subordinate units. d. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate units and higher HQ movement plans. e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC). <p>7. Staff officers supervise staff sections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Direct sections to update RSOP, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and commander's guidance annually or whenever changes in unit mission or structure dictate. b. Verify section input for annual commander's mobilization brief. c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's brief, as required. d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Lists EEFI from higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex.</p> <p>d. Lists indicators that affect or may compromise the EEFI.</p> <p>e. Lists all countermeasure requirements by reviewing higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex and the battalion's operations profile.</p> <p>f. Prepares battalion's OPSEC plan.</p> <p>NOTE: OPSEC Plan should implement CP policies and procedures to overcome or neutralize the enemy's ability to collect information in the areas of communications, intelligence, logistics, and administrative actions.</p> <p>g. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all subordinate units using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 and S6 Sections implement OPSEC plan. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001)</p> <p>a. S6 enforces COMSEC measures to deny friendly information to the enemy by telecommunication means.</p> <p>b. S6 enforces ELSEC measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions from enemy identification or location.</p> <p>c. S6 enforces compromising emanations controls to render enemy detection devices ineffective.</p> <p>d. S6 enforces ECCM to ensure the battalion's receipt and transmission of information essential to mission accomplishment is not disrupted.</p> <p>e. S6 enforces information security measures to prevent compromise of classified and unclassified information.</p> <p>f. S2/S3 enforces physical security measures to prevent espionage, sabotage, or theft at command and control or support facilities.</p> <p>g. S6 controls usage of passwords.</p> <p>h. S6 installs antivirus software.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 and S6 Sections provide feedback on status of OPSEC program.</p> <p>a. Inspect subordinate units' positions for OPSEC effectiveness.</p> <p>b. Inspect battalion's camouflage and concealment measures for compliance with TSOP, OPORD, and current tactical situation.</p> <p>c. Identify OPSEC weakness and recommended corrections by continuously reviewing higher HQ OPSEC updates.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Coordinate additional support requirements with higher HQ or the supporting unit using radio, wire or appropriate BFACS. e. Provide feedback report to commander, staff, and subordinate elements on OPSEC effectiveness. measures using radio, telephone, or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Coordinates medical mass casualty evacuation and treatment support with the S1 Section and supporting medical element. e. Coordinates alternate methods of conducting support mission with the Support Operations Section. f. Coordinates alternate lines of communications with S6 Section. g. Coordinates additional and augmented decontamination support with higher HQ staff element. h. Develops NBC defense item consumption plan for increased demand. i. Develops personnel, equipment, and facilities decontamination plan. j. Disseminates NBC defense plan to all subordinate units using appropriate BFACS. <p>2. S2/S3 Section directs preparation for NBC defense. (STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2017)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies backup command and control procedures. b. Alerts all NBC defense teams and subordinate companies of impending or actual attack. c. Maintains NBC analog/digital situation map(s) to include potential enemy NBC targets, decontamination site overlays, and predicted contamination overlay. d. Directs periodic monitoring by subordinate units of their assigned areas. e. Directs appropriate MOPP level. f. Directs preparation for receiving NBC decontamination augmentations. g. Directs redeployment of units and facilities. <p>3. S2/S3 Section directs response to initial effects of NBC attack. (STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2007, O4-5030.00-2008)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Revises MOPP level as necessary. b. Alerts higher, lower, adjacent units of imminent attack using appropriate BFACS. c. Reestablishes chains of command and communication, as required. d. Assesses damage to equipment and facilities by analyzing reports from subordinate units. e. Coordinates assistance for subordinate units with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Alerts mortuary affairs and EPW collection points and aid stations of NBC hazards. g. Forwards NBC 1 and subsequent NBC 1 reports to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using appropriate BFACS. h. Computes yield and ground zero location. i. Prepares downwind hazard prediction. j. Prepares simplified fallout prediction. k. Forwards NBC 6 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate using appropriate BFACS. l. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff. <p>4. S2/S3 Section directs response to residual effects of NBC attack. (STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2019)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Plots NBC 4 report on situation map. b. Forwards NBC 4 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element. c. Maintains radiation exposure status. d. Prepares analog/digital contamination overlay(s). e. Predicts contamination duration period. f. Plots NBC 3 report on analog/digital situation map. g. Briefs NBC implications to commander and staff. h. Lists restoration decontamination requirements. i. Recommends survey requirements to S2/S3 and HQ NBC Element. j. Coordinates for replacement of chemical personnel and mass casualty handling procedures with the S1 Section. k. Coordinates clearing of obstacles and the use of chemical weapons in denial operations with the supporting engineer and the supporting rear operations elements. l. Directs revised MOPP level as required. m. Coordinates acquisition, storage, and issue of NBC equipment and supplies with the S4 Section. n. Updates NBC defense contingency plan. o. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff. <p>5. S2/S3 Section directs preparation for a friendly NBC strike.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies specific actions by analyzing STRIKEWARN message.</p> <p>b. Provides current situation briefing to commander.</p> <p>c. Directs subordinate units to implement NBC defense protective measures using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>6. S2/S3 Section directs radiological and chemical surveys. (STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2015)</p> <p>a. Selects survey techniques IAW FM 3-4.</p> <p>b. Tasks units to provide team(s).</p> <p>c. Formulates turnback dose and dose rates.</p> <p>d. Prepares overlays and/or strip maps to destination point(s).</p> <p>e. Briefs survey team(s) on current situation and information requirements.</p> <p>f. Recommends COA to S2/S3 after analyzing survey team(s) data.</p> <p>g. Lists decontamination requirements.</p> <p>7. S2/S3 Section directs radiological and chemical decontamination. (STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2020)</p> <p>a. Identifies degree and extent of hazard(s).</p> <p>b. Establishes an acceptable level of decontamination IAW commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Directs MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>d. Identifies areas and facilities for sustainment decontamination.</p> <p>e. Supervises marking of contaminated runoff areas.</p> <p>f. Updates battalion and subordinate units' radiation status.</p> <p>g. Requests replenishment of NBC decontamination equipment and supplies from S4 Section.</p> <p>8. S2/S3 Section coordinates hasty decontamination.</p> <p>a. Directs PMCS before-operations checks on vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>b. Identifies contaminated locations and routes to be taken.</p> <p>c. Coordinates set up assistance with subordinate units and site supervisor.</p> <p>d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>9. S2/S3 Section coordinates for detailed equipment and personnel decontamination.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinates with higher and lower units using appropriate BFACS. b. Coordinates additional support with higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element . c. Coordinates with Support Operations Section for decontamination priorities of service support facilities. d. Directs NBC augmentations to designated area. e. Monitors decontamination operations to ensure priority guidance is being followed. f. Provides decontamination status updates to the commander and supporting rear operations element.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O4-5030.00-2007	Supervise Unit Response to Nuclear Attack or Radiological Hazard
	O4-5030.00-2008	Prepare and Submit Nuclear, Biological, or Chemical 1 Report
	O4-5030.00-2015	Supervise Radiation Monitoring
	O4-5030.00-2017	Prepare for Nuclear, Biological, or Chemical Attack
	O4-5030.00-2019	Control Unit Radiation Exposure
	O4-5030.00-2020	Supervise Nuclear, Biological, or Chemical Decontamination
	S4-5030.00-3003	Describe Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Concepts

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

TASK: PREPARE CONTINUITY OF OPERATIONS PLAN (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4024)

(DA Pam 710-2-2)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-2-2)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate, and has provided his decision and concept of operations. The Support Operations Section is preparing the service support annex for the battalion's area of responsibility. Current status of the support automation system is known. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: COOP provides policies and procedures to maintain continuity of operations in the event of automated systems failure IAW TSOP and OPLAN. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase COOP completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section provides procedures for backup data storage. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with the CSSAMO to determine specific elements providing backup ADP equipment support for operations under the COOP. b. Provides instructions for storing magnetic backup media at a location other than the current operational site. 2. Support Operations Section provides outage measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides instructions for processing high-priority requests. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Provides instructions for processing low-priority requests. c. Provides instructions for updating records when system is operational again. <p>3. Support Operations Section provides long-term outage measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides instructions for processing requests. b. Provides instructions for processing high-priority requests on a post-post basis. c. Provides instructions for setting up manual stock records IAW DA Pam 710-2-2. <p>4. Support Operations Section coordinates user-level assistance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates troubleshooting subordinate unit equipment with supporting automation support element to determine problem areas and solutions. b. Coordinates request for software replacement with S6 Section and higher HQ automation support office. c. Coordinates limited maintenance hardware support with S6 and higher HQ automation support office. d. Coordinates user-level sustainment training with higher HQ automation support office. e. Integrates databases for new units. f. Coordinates assistance for staffs and units CSS STAMIS. <p>5. Support Operations Section provides for continuity of ADP operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies ADP backup unit for subordinate units in coordination with higher HQ automation support office. b. Coordinates instructions for operators in backup procedures. c. Monitors execution of subordinate units' COOPs for compliance with battalion's COOP. d. Provides commander the status of automated systems. <p>6. Support Operations Section formats COOP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates COOP information into the proper format. b. Forwards COOP to the Commander for approval or modification. c. Forwards approved COOP to all subordinate units. <p>7. S6 performs CSSCS network management functions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Collects status from organic units for ABCS. b. Collects status on CSS STAMIS from organic units for the CSSAMO. c. Resolves application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION**TASK: COORDINATE INTERNAL LOGISTICS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4025)**

(FM 63-20-1)

(AR 220-1)

(DA Pam 710-2-2)

(FM 10-14-2)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Battalion support operations have commenced. Logistics requirements are being generated within the battalion. Although SCPE is on hand, the S4 Section operates from field-expedient or natural shelters under reduced manpower conditions. This task is performed under all environment conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion internal supply, maintenance, field services, and transportation operations are coordinated IAW the TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase operational completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S4 Section coordinates battalion maintenance operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-4976.90-0501, O3-4995.90-0010) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates subordinate units' maintenance reports to analyze overall battalion equipment readiness. b. Provides equipment status reports to commander and other staff sections for mission planning purposes. c. Monitors maintenance management system automated data output to assist in forecasting requirements and analyzing performance indicators. d. Coordinates current or anticipated maintenance problems with other staff sections and subordinate units using CSSCS. e. Monitors subordinate units' PLL to ensure levels are consistent with requirements established in the TSOP. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Coordinates recovery and evacuation assets with subordinate units to ensure the timely recovery and evacuation of all battalion equipment using wire, MTS, radio, or appropriate BFACS. g. Monitors controlled substitution program within the battalion to ensure compliance with guidance and priorities established by the commander. h. Coordinates priority of maintenance efforts and repair time guidelines with the S2/S3 and Support Operations Sections and subordinate units using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. i. Provides current material readiness briefing to commander and XO, as required. <p>2. S4 Section coordinates battalion supply activities. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-5101.00-0006, O3-5101.00-0281, O3-5101.00-0282)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors subordinate units' supply operations to ensure compliance with TSOP and applicable regulations. b. Processes requests for replenishing basic loads to verify requirements and accuracy. c. Maintains data on available usage and required rates of Class III and V. d. Monitors Class V resupply activities of subordinate units to ensure compliance with established issue controls. e. Monitors battalion Class III resupply activities to ensure compliance with established issue controls. f. Coordinates schedules and methods of distribution between subordinate and supporting units using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. g. Coordinates receipt and disposition of captured enemy equipment with S2/S3 Section. h. Maintains property book records of subordinate elements and any separate elements operating in the battalion area of responsibility. i. Records adjustments, issues, turn-ins, property losses, and status reports using SPBS-R programs. j. Calculates consumption rates for MOPP gear and decontamination supplies. k. Maintains commander's critical items list. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. S4 Section coordinates battalion services. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-5104.00-0007, O3-5104.00-0026, O3-5105.00-0002, O3-8310.00-9000)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwards battalion field feeding plan to all organic and attached elements using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. b. Inspects subordinate units' field fielding operations and ration storage areas to ensure compliance with feeding plan and sanitation regulations. c. Coordinates field service requirements for all subordinate units with higher HQ staff element or supporting field services element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. d. Designates salvage collection points. e. Controls evacuation of salvage IAW TSOP, OPORD, and commander's directives. f. Submits requests for mortuary items to higher HQ staff element or supporting mortuary affairs element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. g. Coordinates water requirements for all subordinate units with higher HQ staff element or supporting water element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. h. Provides food service and field services status briefing to the Support Operations Section and commander, as required. <p>4. S4 Section coordinates battalion transportation requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates transportation requirements for all subordinate units. b. Coordinates battalion administrative transportation requirements with higher HQ staff element or supporting movement control element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. c. Requests road clearances for movement of supplies, equipment, or personnel from supporting movement control element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. d. Coordinates transportation for EPW evacuation with the supporting MP element in coordination with S2/S3 Section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Coordinates transportation assets for evacuation and hospitalization of casualties resulting from NBC warfare. f. Updates load plans for the battalion HQ in coordination with the HQ company commander. g. Inspects subordinate units' load plans to ensure compliance with TSOP and commander's directives. h. Provides internal transportation status report to commander and XO, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-4976.90-0501	Prepare a Materiel Condition Status Report
	O3-4995.90-0010	Direct Vehicle and Equipment Recovery Operations
	O3-5101.00-0006	Conduct a Report of Survey
	O3-5101.00-0281	Direct the Preparation and Maintenance of Unit Supply Records
	O3-5101.00-0282	Direct the Storage of Unit Supplies, Weapons, Equipment, and Ammunition
	O3-5104.00-0007	Supervise Graves Registration Support
	O3-5104.00-0026	Plan Graves Registration Support
	O3-5105.00-0002	Direct Field Feeding Operations
	O3-8310.00-9000	Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine and Field Sanitation Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE CLASS III SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4026)

(FM 10-67-1)

(FM 10-67)

(FM 10-67-2)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Class III requirements are generated by units engaged in tactical operations. Combat operations are occurring with units dispersed and conducting various functions. Class III sustainment controls and priorities are established. Class III consumption estimates are received from the supported units through the higher HQ staff element. Supply methods and procedures are dictated by the type of combat operation. Support Operations Section monitors operations by telephone, messenger, digital, and radio. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Class III support is continuous from the outset of the operations at levels that sustains the momentum of the operations and preplanned bulk fuel resupply is executed IAW the higher HQ Service Support Annex. Supported units' basic loads are maintained at the levels directed by higher HQ. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to provide Class III support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section monitors status of Class III distribution system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all sustainment controls and priorities in the higher HQ Service Support Annex. b. Maintains current location(s) of Class III supply points in the division and EAD distribution system. c. Monitors daily consumption reports from the issuing units to commodity managers to ensure compliance with sustainment controls. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Monitors bulk fuel forecast from supported units' S4s to commodity mangers for compliance with sustainment controls. e. Maintains records of current storage capabilities of issuing units and supported units. f. Monitors supported units' basic load status in coordination with higher HQ staff element to ensure they are maintained at prescribed levels. g. Coordinates throughput of bulk product with the higher HQ, supported units, and the issuing element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. h. Coordinates resolution of actual or anticipated Class III problems with higher HQ and issuing elements using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. i. Provides Class III status update to Support Operations Officer and XO, as required. j. Inputs manual petroleum data into CSSCS. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates Class III support activities. (STP 10-92ABDII-MQS: O3-5103.00-0081)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates Class III pickup schedules with the issuing element, supported units, and higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. b. Monitors Class III requisitions and issues from distribution points to using units to ensure compliance with sustainment controls. c. Coordinates Class III deliveries by the issuing element to using units with the higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. d. Monitors Class III distribution point(s) daily status reports to verify current bulk Class III levels. e. Coordinates the direction, redirection, cross-leveling or massing of fuel distribution to meet unexpected surge requirements with higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. f. Coordinates impact of threat capability to interdict distribution routes with higher HQ staff element using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. g. Provides Class III status updates to the higher HQ staff personnel and supported units using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. h. Inputs manual petroleum data into CSSCS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates Class III support during offensive operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Identifies all sustainment controls and priorities in the service support annex. c. Implements increased consumption plan in coordination with the higher HQ staff elements, issuing elements, and supported units. d. Recommends adjustments to bulk fuel forecasts to reflect increased fuel requirements to higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. e. Coordinates relocation of Class III supply points to forward locations with higher HQ staff personnel and issuing elements as the tactical situation develops using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. f. Forwards revisions to customer support lists to reflect changing operational requirements, task organization and priorities to higher HQ staff personnel and issuing elements using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. g. Coordinates throughout of bulk fuel and fog oil distribution with higher HQ elements, issuing elements, and supported units using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. h. Coordinates bulk fuel airdrop or sling load resupply with the higher HQ staff personnel and issuing elements using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. i. Monitors the POL portion of LOGPAC to ensure that required amounts are forwarded to the requesting unit. <p>4. Support Operations Section coordinates Class III support during defensive operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Coordinates stockpiling of limited amounts of Class III products in centrally located battle positions as directed by higher HQ staff personnel with the issuing element using appropriate BFACS, wire or radio. c. Monitors the POL portion of LOGPAC to ensure that required amounts are forwarded to the requesting unit. d. Organizes Class III assets for nighttime distribution operations to reduce the chances of threat interference. e. Repositions Class III assets by echelon to the rear. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Directs issuing elements to maintain fuel levels of all POL distribution storage assets at maximum capacity.</p> <p>g. Inputs manual data into CSSCS.</p> <p>h. Inputs manual petroleum data into CSSCS.</p> <p>5. Support Operations Section coordinates Class III support during retrograde operations.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using radio, wire or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>b. Coordinates adjustments to fuel consumption forecasts to reduce quantity of fuel distribution to supported units with higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>c. Coordinates evacuation of petroleum products to planned fallback points as directed by the higher HQ staff personnel and issuing elements.</p> <p>d. Provides instructions for destruction of petroleum products to supported and subordinate units to prevent capture or use by threat forces using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>e. Coordinates security requirements with higher HQ staff personnel and supported units using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>f. Inputs manual petroleum data into CSSCS.</p> <p>6. Support Operations Section coordinates Class III Support in an NBC environment.</p> <p>a. Identifies location, type, and amount of contaminated petroleum products within the AO.</p> <p>b. Coordinates the disposition of contaminated petroleum products with higher HQ staff personnel using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>c. Inputs manual petroleum data into CSSCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 10-92ABDII-MQS	O3-5103.00-0081	Supervise the Receipt, Storage, and Distribution of Petroleum Products

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE CLASS V SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4027)

(FM 9-6)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

(FM 9-38)

(TM 9-1300-206)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Class V requirements are being generated by units engaged in tactical operations. Division operations are occurring with units dispersed and conducting various functions. Class V sustainment controls and priorities are established. Class V status reports are received from issuing units. Supply methods and procedures are dictated by the type of combat operations. Corps and divisional "slice" elements are operational in the AO. Support Operations Section monitors operations by telephone, messenger, digital systems and radio. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Class V support is continuous from the outset of the operation at levels that sustain the momentum of the operation IAW higher HQ service support annex. Basic loads for AO supported units are maintained at a level directed by higher HQ staff element. At MOPP4, Class V predesignated degradation supply levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section monitors status of Class V sustainment system. (STP 10-92ABDII-MQS: S3-5101.00-0273, STP 9-55B34-SM-TG: 093-400-3314) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all sustainment controls and priorities in higher HQ service support annex. b. Maintains current locations of all ATPs, corps ASPs, and other stockpiles in the AO. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Maintains current Class V stockage level of all units in AO. d. Coordinates resolutions of actual or anticipated Class V problems with the higher HQ staff elements and issuing units using wire, radio, or CSSCS. e. Maintain visibility of ammunition flatracks. f. Monitors ammunition items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates Class V activities in the AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS. b. Directs, redirects, cross-levels or masses Class V to meet unexpected surge requirements based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance. c. Coordinates with higher and lower units using wire, radio, or CSSCS. d. Coordinates Class V supplies pickup schedules with ATP and higher HQ staff elements. e. Monitors Class V requisitions and issues from the ATP to using units to ensure compliance with established sustainment controls. f. Coordinates Class V pickup from corps ASP to using units with the higher HQ staff elements. g. Provides recommendations to higher HQ staff personnel on Class V cross-leveling and changes to support procedures as dictated by priorities and the changing tactical situation. h. Coordinates ammunition supply quality assurance, EOD and inspection/malfunction investigations with higher HQ staff elements. i. Identifies probable Class V shortages based on the ATP daily stockage report to the DAO. j. Provides assistance in monitoring chemical munitions requirements when they are stored within the AO. k. Provides assistance in coordinating EOD mission requirements in the AO. l. Provides ammunition status updates to Support Operations Officer or XO, as required. m. Ensures ammunition flatracks are expeditiously returned to the distribution system. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>n. Monitors ammunition items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates Class V Support during offensive operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS. b. Coordinates using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. c. Identifies all sustainment controls and priorities given by higher HQ service support annex or staff elements. d. Identifies location(s) and amounts of all stockpiled ammunition located in the AO. e. Coordinates additional transportation requirements for movement of ammunition within the AO with the higher HQ staff personnel. f. Coordinates movement of the ATP as far forward as possible to decrease ammunition pickup and delivery times with higher HQ staff personnel and issuing units. g. Coordinates movement of preplanned/preconfigured Class V push-packages with higher HQ staff elements, supported units and issuing units. h. Coordinates Class V airdrop or sling load resupply with higher HQ staff elements, supported units and issuing units. i. Adjusts cross-level distribution of ammunition stocks as the tactical situation changes. j. Ensures ammunition flatracks are expeditiously returned to the distribution system. k. Monitors ammunition items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>4. Support Operations Section coordinates Class V support during defensive operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS. b. Coordinates using wire, radio, or appropriate BFACS. c. Coordinates stockpiling limited amounts of ammunition in centrally located positions in the DSA with the higher HQ staff elements, supported units, DAO and issuing units. d. Coordinates adjustment of basic loads to allow supported units to stock increased amounts of ammunition with the DAO, supported units, and issuing units. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Coordinates combat configured loads of critical ammunition on a scheduled basis with the higher HQ staff element, supported units, DAO, and issuing units. f. Coordinates positioning of semi-trailers and other vehicles loaded with unit type, high-usage ammunition near positions expected to be occupied as defensive units fall back with the DAO, higher HQ staff elements and issuing units. g. Directs subordinate units to upload Class V supplies for rapid displacement. h. Plans night resupply operations in coordination with the higher HQ staff elements and issuing units. i. Coordinates replenishment, reallocation and redistribution of ammunition stocks, as needed with the higher HQ staff elements and issuing units. j. Ensures ammunition flatracks are expeditiously returned to the distribution system. <p>5. Support Operations Section coordinates Class V support during retrograde operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS. b. Coordinates using wire, radio, or CSSCS. c. Identifies status of all supported units' basic loads. d. Coordinates limiting the flow of ammunition with the higher HQ staff elements, supported units, and issuing units. e. Provides instructions for destruction of ammunition to supported units and subordinate units IAW TSOP. f. Coordinates for storage of ammunition on mobile tractor-trailers with DAO and staff sections. g. Coordinates evacuation of Class V supplies to planned fall back points as directed by the higher HQ staff elements and issuing units. h. Direct evacuation of Class V at night and during periods of limited visibility. i. Coordinates security requirements for movement or storing of Class V supplies with the higher HQ staff elements. j. Ensures ammunition flatracks are expeditiously returned to the system. k. Monitors ammunition items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. Support Operation Section coordinates Class V support in an NBC environment.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS.</p> <p>b. Coordinates using wire, radio, or CSSCS.</p> <p>c. Maintains location, type and amount of contaminated ammunition located in AO.</p> <p>d. Coordinates movement of contaminated stocks with higher HQ staff elements and supported units.</p> <p>e. Coordinates routes for transporting contaminated stock with higher HQ staff elements.</p> <p>f. Coordinates issuance of contaminated stock with the higher HQ staff element, issuing units and supported units.</p> <p>g. Ensures ammunition flatracks are expeditiously returned to the distribution system.</p> <p>h. Monitors ammunition items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 10-92ABDII-MQS	S3-5101.00-0273	Trace the Flow of Requests for and Receipt Of Class I, II, III, IV, V, VII, and IX Supplies and Identify Field Services Available to Divisional Units
STP 9-55B34-SM-TG	093-400-3314	Plan Ammunition Sling-Out Operations

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION**TASK: COORDINATE MAINTENANCE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4028)**

(FM 9-43-1)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

(FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Units engaged in tactical operations generate maintenance requirements. Supported units are deployed and operational. Maintenance sustainment controls and priorities have been established. Logistics status reports with equipment readiness data are received from the supported units. The type of current operation dictates maintenance methods and procedures. Support Operations Section monitors operations by telephone, messenger, digital and radio. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Maintenance support is continuous from the outset of operations at levels that sustain operational momentum IAW higher HQ service support annex. At MOPP4, predesignated degradation maintenance and supply levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section supervises maintenance management and readiness visibility. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all sustainment controls and priorities in the higher HQ service support annex. b. Maintains a list of current location(s) of all maintenance and supporting elements in the AO. c. Maintains status of work orders, production, backlog, manpower and parts cost. d. Maintains status of the capabilities of the maintenance system, to include equipment, personnel and vehicles. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Provides maintenance and readiness updates to the commander and staff and higher HQ staff, as required, using SAMS2. f. Provides readiness data to LOGSA. g. Coordinates supply management of Class IX in support of subordinate unit PLL and shop activities. h. Monitors the maintenance and readiness of all equipment and weapons items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates maintenance support activities</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS and SAMS2. b. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. c. Monitors subordinate units BDAR efforts to ensure focus on equipment and weapons systems that have an immediate impact on the combat mission. d. Coordinates vehicular recovery of equipment to MCPs with the higher HQ staff elements, and unit performing the recovery. e. Coordinates repair time guidelines with higher HQ staff element and unit performing the repair. f. Monitors cannibalization activities at MCPs to ensure compliance with higher HQ disposition instructions. g. Coordinates lateral shifting of evacuation missions with higher HQ and unit responsible for evacuation mission, where backlogs are creating problems in the supported units. h. Coordinates controlled exchange activities with higher HQ and issuing units to ensure compliance with higher HQ directives. i. Monitors repair parts supply system for compliance with issue controls and priorities as directed by higher HQ staff element. j. Coordinates evacuation of vehicles and equipment to the rear with higher HQ staff element and the unit performing the evacuation. k. Monitors ORF stock to ensure adequacy and compliance with higher HQ staff element. l. Inspects ASL change list in coordination with the using unit to ensure that only essential items are retained. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>m. Monitors automated maintenance management system output data to assist in forecasting requirements, scheduling workloads, reducing backlogs, and analyzing performance indicators.</p> <p>n. Provides maintenance system report updates to the commander and staff and higher HQ staff, as required.</p> <p>o. Monitors the maintenance and readiness of all equipment items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates maintenance support during offensive operations.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using radio, wire or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>b. Coordinates using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>c. Coordinates relocation of maintenance repair activities to coincide with tactical situation with higher HQ and maintenance unit.</p> <p>d. Provides instructions that directs emphasis on repair of critical items as far forward as possible and at the lowest level.</p> <p>e. Directs that only unserviceable repairable items be reported and that they be recovered no farther than the MSR.</p> <p>f. Provides alert of maintenance backlog and increased backup maintenance support requirements to the higher HQ staff elements.</p> <p>g. Directs recovery operations using all available recovery and evacuation assets in coordination with S4 Section, supporting units and higher HQ staff elements.</p> <p>h. Coordinates uploading of combat-essential ASL and PLL stocks with higher HQ staff element and supporting maintenance units for quick deployment forward.</p> <p>i. Directs subordinate maintenance unit to release ORF items to meet surge needs in coordination with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>j. Monitors maintenance and readiness on all equipment items on the Commander's Tracked items Lists.</p> <p>4. Support Operations Section coordinates maintenance support during defensive operations.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. c. Coordinates maintenance repair parts operations with the higher HQ staff personnel and supporting maintenance units. d. Consolidates operations of different types of MSTs to maximize use of available transportation assets. e. Provides instructions to send MSTs as far forward as can be safely controlled to reduce evacuation requirements. f. Directs maintenance efforts to ensure the return of critical repairable weapons systems to mission capable condition in at least time possible. g. Coordinates relocation of supporting maintenance elements with higher HQ staff personnel and supporting maintenance unit by echeloning supporting elements to the rear. h. Coordinates security requirements for maintenance operations with the S2/S3 and S4 Sections. i. Monitors maintenance and readiness of all equipment items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>5. Support Operations Section coordinates maintenance support during retrograde operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS. b. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. c. Identifies all units within AO that have recovery capabilities. d. Coordinates limiting the flow of repair parts and replacement components forward with higher HQ and supporting maintenance unit. e. Coordinates additional transportation requirements needed to deploy maintenance elements and critical repairable equipment to the rear with higher HQ staff element and supporting units. f. Directs evacuation of maintenance elements that have critical repairables to fallback points as directed by higher HQ staff element. g. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for cannibalization exception to policy for repairing as many weapons systems and equipment as possible. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Directs destruction of critical nonrepairable and noncritical equipment that are not repairable within the established time frame in coordination with the supporting maintenance unit IAW established directives.</p> <p>i. Directs evacuation of supplies and equipment at night and during other periods of limited visibility, if tactical situation permits.</p> <p>j. Coordinates security requirements for maintenance operations with the S2/S3 and S4 Sections.</p> <p>k. Monitors maintenance and readiness of all equipment and weapons items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p> <p>6. Support Operations Section coordinates maintenance support in an NBC environment.</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using CSSCS.</p> <p>b. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS.</p> <p>c. Maintains current locations of amount and type of contamination effecting maintenance elements in coordination with S2/S3 Section.</p> <p>d. Prioritizes contaminated equipment for repairs, recovery, and evacuation in coordination with higher HQ staff element and supporting maintenance unit.</p> <p>e. Coordinates requirements for decontamination teams with higher HQ staff personnel and the S2/S3 Section.</p> <p>f. Monitors maintenance and readiness on all equipment and weapons items on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION**TASK:** COORDINATE CLASS II, IV, VII, AND IX SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4029)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 10-15)

(FM 10-27)

(FM 3-4)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Class II, IV, VII, and IX requirements are generated by battle loss reports or requisition only. Support operations are commencing with its subordinate elements conducting various activities. Sustainment controls and priorities have been established. Supply methods and procedures are dictated by the type of combat operation. Corps "slice " elements are operational in the AO. Support Operations Section monitors operations by radio, telephone, digital means, and messenger. Threat intelligence gathering and attacks have increased. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Class II, IV, VII, and IX support are continuous from the outset of the operation at levels that sustain the momentum of combat operation IAW the higher HQ service support annex. At MOPP4, predetermined degradation support levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section coordinates Class II support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors requisitions and issues between supported units and issuing units for compliance with sustainment controls in the higher HQ service support annex. b. Coordinates resolution of Class II supply problems with the higher HQ and issuing unit. c. Coordinates deliveries with the S2/S3 Section, higher HQ and issuing unit. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Coordinates emergency or air resupply with higher HQ, supported units and issuing units. e. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. f. Monitors Class II items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. g. Coordinates with the supporting materiel manager of Class II to throughput materiel to the lowest level DSU or requesting unit. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates Class IV support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors requisitions and issues between supported units and issuing units for compliance with sustainment controls as established by the higher HQ service support annex. b. Coordinates resolution of Class IV supply problems with higher HQ, supporting engineers, issuing units and higher HQ S2/S3 Section. c. Coordinates delivery schedules with higher HQ, issuing units and using units. d. Coordinates increased demands during defensive operations with higher HQ, issuing units and using units. e. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. f. Monitors Class IV items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. g. Coordinates with the supporting materiel manager of Class IV to throughput materiel to the lowest level DSU or requesting unit. <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates Class VII support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors battle loss reports to identify Class VII replacement requirements. b. Coordinates assembly of end items, crew, and ammunition, if notified that weapon systems replacement is to be conducted. c. Coordinates Class VII deliveries with the higher HQ, issuing units and using units. d. Coordinates weapon system replacement operations with higher HQ staff element. e. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. f. Monitors Class VII items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Coordinates with the supporting materiel manager of Class VII to throughput materiel to the lowest level DSU or requesting unit.</p> <p>4. Support Operations Section coordinates Class IX support.</p> <p>a. Monitors requisition and issues between supported units and issuing units.</p> <p>b. Coordinates resolution of Class IX supply conflicts with higher HQ and issuing unit.</p> <p>c. Coordinates deliveries with S2/S3 Section, higher HQ, and issuing unit.</p> <p>d. Coordinates emergency or air resupply with higher HQ, supported units, and issuing units.</p> <p>e. Monitor readiness reports to identify Class IX items impacting repair cycle time.</p> <p>f. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS.</p> <p>g. Monitor Class VII items on the Commander's Tracked items List.</p> <p>h. Coordinates with the supporting materiel manager of Class IX to throughput materiel to the lowest level DSU or requesting unit.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Coordinates Class I air resupply operations with higher HQ and issuing units. f. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. g. Coordinates the throughput of Class I with the supporting materiel management element down to the lowest level DSU or customer. h. Monitors Class I items on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates water support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains current locations of all water points. b. Coordinates water deliveries from water issue points to using units with higher HQ and issuing units. c. Forwards current water point(s) operations hours to higher HQ staff element and all supported units. d. Coordinates resolution of water supply problems with higher HQ and issuing units. e. Provides water support status updates to the commander and staff, as required. f. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS. g. Monitors Water status when included on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates for Class VI supply support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for exchange services with higher HQ staff element. b. Coordinates request for exchange sales teams with higher HQ staff element when exchange service is not available. c. Coordinates with transportation unit(s) for transportation of Class VI supplies to exchange retail location. d. Coordinates a detail of personnel to load and unload Class VI supplies at pickup and delivery points. e. Coordinates hours of sales operations with sales team and customer units. f. Coordinates using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Coordinates tactical echelonment of medical evacuation elements with higher HQ and the concerned unit during offensive operations using radio, wire or CSSCS. f. Coordinates the relocation of medical evacuation elements to rearward positions with higher HQ and the concerned unit during defensive operations using radio, wire or CSSCS. g. Coordinates the relocation of medical evacuation element to rearward positions with higher HQ and the unit concerned during retrograde operations using radio, wire or CSSCS. h. Performs medical logistics inventory management using MEDLOG-D. <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates medical supplies, equipment and medical assemblages support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors MEDLOG requisitions and issues from the medical unit to supported units' aid stations to ensure compliance with sustainment controls. b. Coordinates resolution of medical supply, equipment and assemblage issues with higher HQ and medical evacuation unit using radio, wire, MEDLOG-D, or CSSCS. c. Coordinates additional transportation requirements for delivery of medical supplies and assemblages with higher HQ staff element using MTS, radio, wire, or CSSCS. d. Coordinates the throughput of medical supplies, equipment and assemblages to the lowest level aid station using MTS, radio, wire, MEDLOG-D, or CSSCS. e. Monitor all medical supplies, equipment and assemblages on the Commander's Tracked Items List. <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates bio-medical equipment maintenance support.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: SUPPORT OPERATIONS SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE TRANSPORTATION SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4033)

(FM 55-1)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 55-10)
(FM 55-15)	(FM 55-30)	(FM 63-20-1)
(FM 63-21-1)	(FM 63-23-2)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Transportation requirements are generated by units engaged in tactical operations. Support operations are commencing with its subordinate elements conducting various activities. Transportation sustainment controls and priorities have been established. Transportation methods and procedures are dictated by type of tactical operation. Support Operations Sections monitor operations by digital, wire, messenger, and radio. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supplies, equipment, and personnel are moved in support of operations as prescribed in the higher HQ and battalion support plans. At MOPP4, predetermined degradation support levels are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Support Operations Section maintains status of transportation assets in the AO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains current locations of all transportation assets and activities supporting operations in the AO. b. Monitors transportation capabilities by reviewing CSSCS LOGSTAT data relevant to subordinate transportation elements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Coordinates transportation priorities, task organization and highway regulation within the AO with higher HQ staff element and supporting MP element using radio, wire, or DAMMS-R.</p> <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates ground transportation support.</p> <p>a. Monitors transportation operations to ensure assets are committed based on priorities for movement established by higher HQ service support annex and commander.</p> <p>b. Recommends cross-leveling of workload throughout the AO to support changing priorities to higher HQ and battalion commander.</p> <p>c. Submits road movement request to higher HQ to obtain clearance to move convoys and oversize/overweight vehicles through the AO using DAMMS-R.</p> <p>d. Coordinates delivery schedules of logistics items to the AO with higher HQ, supporting units and transportation units.</p> <p>e. Coordinates delivery of supplies and equipment within the AO with the supporting units and transportation units.</p> <p>f. Forwards requests for additional transportation to higher HQ.</p> <p>g. Coordinates resolutions for transportation delays or problems with higher HQ and transportation units.</p> <p>h. Provides ground transportation status updates to the commander and staff, as required.</p> <p>i. Coordinates using radio, wire, DAMMS-R, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Branch coordinates air transportation support.</p> <p>a. Monitors preplanned airlift resupply request in coordination with higher HQ for compliance with delivery schedules.</p> <p>b. Coordinates airlift support operations requests between the S2/S3 Section and higher HQ.</p> <p>c. Coordinates delivery times and locations with higher HQ staff elements and S2/S3 and S4 Sections, transportation units and issuing units.</p> <p>d. Coordinates ground support equipment and follow on transportation support for all deliveries in the AO with receiving unit and local transportation elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Provides air transportation support status update to commander and staff, as required. f. Coordinates using radio, wire, DAMMS-R, or appropriate BFACS. 4. Support Operations Section coordinates transportation support in an NBC environment. a. Forecasts the impact of NBC attacks on support operations in coordination with the battalion NBC personnel. b. Coordinates delivery of contaminated cargo with higher HQ staff elements. c. Disseminates information on contaminated routes and rerouting to all subordinate elements. d. Requests information on contaminated routes and highway reconnaissance data from RCPOC, S2/S3 Section, and MPs operating in the area. e. Coordinates deliberate decontamination of transfer points with S2/S3 Section. f. Coordinates using radio, wire, CSSCS, or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Coordinates aerial reconnaissance to search for remains with the S4, higher HQ staff element and supporting unit using radio, wire, or CSSCS.</p> <p>f. Provides MA operation status update to the commander and staff, as required.</p> <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates airdrop services.</p> <p>a. Provides instructions on policies and procedures for requesting airdrop service to S4 and supporting units.</p> <p>b. Provides technical assistance on airdrop, rigging, and maintenance of airdrop equipment to the supported units in the AO.</p> <p>c. Forwards airdrop request to higher HQ staff element using radio, wire, or CSSCS.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Section coordinates clothing exchange and bath, salvage, laundry, and renovation support.</p> <p>a. Requests clothing exchange and bath, salvage, laundry, and renovation support with higher HQ staff personnel and using units.</p> <p>b. Coordinates location(s) and augmentation procedures with higher HQ staff personnel, S2/S3 Section, and using units.</p> <p>c. Provides times and schedules for field services support to higher HQ staff element and S2/S3 Section, using units, and supported units.</p> <p>d. Coordinates back-haul of all salvage equipment with S2/S3 Section, using units, maintenance unit and transportation unit.</p> <p>e. Provides field services status updates to commander and staff, as required.</p> <p>f. Coordinates using radio, wire, or CSSCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: ASSIST IN REGENERATION ASSESSMENTS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4035)
 (FM 100-9) (FM 12-15) (FM 12-16)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5) (FM 63-20-1)
 (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-2-2) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. A company-size unit has sustained heavy casualties and high attribution of combat equipment during combat operations against the threat's flank. The higher HQ commander needs to know what combat effectiveness remains in the battalion to determine the level of regeneration required before it is ready for further battle. The higher HQ forms an RTF, consisting of personnel from the higher HQ staff, technical personnel assigned to the battalion staff, and subordinate elements. The higher HQ XO exercises supervision over the RTF. SCPE is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion RTF personnel provide accurate data on the status of major weapons systems, overall casualty situations and logistics requirements as directed by the higher HQ commander or XO. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase assessment completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Command Section selects RTF personnel in coordination with Support Operations Section and higher HQ staff element. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Reorganizes battalion staff personnel to maintain required logistics and CHS activities during assessment operations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Provides personnel with expertise in supply, medical, and maintenance fields from the battalion staff. d. Coordinates additional personnel requirements with higher HQ staff element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. e. Inspects RTF personnel to ensure compliance with equipment and areas of expertise requirements as directed by the higher HQ XO or S4 using appropriate BFACS. f. Dispatches RTF personnel to location(s) designated by higher HQ XO or S4. <p>2. Battalion RTF personnel assess degraded unit's logistics and CHS requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Identify number of major weapon systems that have been destroyed. c. Identify number of major weapon systems that are damaged beyond capability of repair in the forward area. d. Identify number of major weapon systems that are damaged but can be repaired in the forward area. e. Identify locations of forward and rear maintenance and salvage collection points. f. Calculate transportation requirements for equipment evacuation operations. g. Identify number of KIA and the MA requirements. h. Identify number of casualties requiring emergency treatment or transportation. i. Identify medical treatment and transportation points in the AO. j. Calculate ground ambulance and MEDEVAC requirements. k. Calculate Class III and V supply requirements to restore degraded capabilities to basic load level. l. Identify Class I and IX supplies, communication equipment, and other critical supply items required, if time permits. <p>3. Battalion RTF personnel provide input to the initial assessment report.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Consolidate logistics and CHS data into a format that gives the status of the unit's combat effectiveness from a logistics and CHS viewpoint. b. Provide battalion's capabilities to resupply the unit and to repair or replace its damaged weapons and equipment. c. Identify the logistics and CHS capabilities required in the RTF. d. Identify shortfalls between battalion's capabilities and the requirements. e. Provide "quick fix" solutions for each deficiency to increase unit's effectiveness. f. Report to the higher HQ commander the level of regeneration required from a logistics and CHS viewpoint using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Identifies reorganization methods, sites, and projected goals in coordination with higher HQ and battalion S2/S3 and S4 Sections. d. Monitors subordinate units for compliance with higher HQ reconstitution directives and task force requests. e. Directs the maintenance unit to make recoveries and repairs IAW with higher HQ directives and regeneration task force requests. f. Coordinates internal CHS for battalion and attached units with the medical unit. g. Coordinates resolution of reorganization support problems with higher HQ and battalion S2/S3 and S4 Sections, regeneration task force, and supporting unit involved. h. Coordinates using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>2. Support Operations Section provides assistance in regeneration operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies regeneration site(s), methods, and levels of effectiveness to which the unit is to be restored. b. Identifies replacement priorities for personnel, equipment, and supplies as established by higher HQ commander. c. Coordinates identified regeneration requirements with the battalion S2/S3 and S4 Sections and higher HQ staff element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. d. Tasks subordinate units to provide assistance in proponent areas, as required using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE PERSONNEL SERVICE SUPPORT (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4042)

(FM 12-6)	(AR 672-5-1)	(DA Pam 600-8-1)
(FM 3-3)	(FM 3-4)	(FM 63-20-1)
(FM 63-21-1)	(FM 63-2-2)	(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support operations have commenced. Subordinate units' battle rosters have been received. Casualties, transfers, and EPW cause personnel actions and adjustments. Although SCPE is on hand, the S1 Section operates in field-expedient and natural shelters under reduced manpower conditions. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: PSS actions are processed at 95 percent accuracy within 24 hours of receipt of request. All PSS activities are conducted IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, PSS is reduced to minimum actions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section performs strength accounting. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-0170.01-1005) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates subordinate units' strength reports. b. Cross-checks casualty witness statements, medical aid stations, and MP straggle control point reports to confirm casualty and/or duty status of individual(s). c. Updates battalion battle roster to reflect current status of all battalion's soldiers. d. Prepares PSR IAW TSOP and FM 12-6. e. Briefs PSR to commander and staff. f. Forwards PSR-Part 1, Personnel Daily Summary through command channels to higher HQ Personnel Section using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Forwards PSR-Part 2 Personnel Requirements Report through AG channels to supporting servicing agency using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. h. Prepares wartime SIDPERS transactions IAW DA Pam 600-8-1. i. Inspects SIDPERS personnel transaction registers to resolve strength imbalances. <p>2. S1 Section processes replacements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes a replacement receiving point. b. Assigns replacements based on unit requirements, priority of requirements, and MOS. c. Prepares arrival transactions and data cards. d. Briefs replacements on unit assignment and tactical situations. e. Updates battle roster. f. Coordinates transportation for replacements to assigned units with the subordinate elements using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>3. S1 Section processes casualty feeder reports.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies casualty feeder reports and witness statements from subordinate units for accuracy and completeness. b. Corrects casualty status and identifies data based on input from supporting medical and mortuary affairs elements. c. Prepares SIDPERS deceased transaction and a SIDPERS organization strength report change for all KIAs and MIAs (after 90 days). d. Forwards casualty data and transactions to higher HQ S1 Personnel Section using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>4. S1 Section prepares internal CHS plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates with supporting medical element for assistance in preparing the battalion CHS plan. b. Coordinates with supporting medical element for routine evacuation, emergency evacuation, and hospitalization of sick or injured personnel. c. Coordinates with supporting medical element for locations of medical and dental facilities. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Coordinates with supporting medical element to determine procedures for requesting medical evacuation support, and the transportation of RTD personnel to assigned units. e. Coordinates probability and impact of NBC related casualties with battalion NBC personnel. f. Coordinates CHS for mass casualties or NBC attack with higher HQ Staff element and supporting medical element. g. Consolidates information into appropriate format IAW FM 8-20. h. Forwards internal CHS plan to XO for approval. i. Disseminates internal CHS plan to all subordinate units. j. Coordinates/disseminates using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>5. S1 Section coordinates internal CHS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculates probable internal CHS requirements. b. Coordinates schedules, locations, and capabilities with supporting medical element. c. Monitors routine and emergency treatment and evacuation procedures to ensure compliance with the battalion TSOP and instructions from supporting medical element. d. Monitors battalion preventive medicine measures to ensure compliance with TSOP. e. Develops battle stress management plan. f. Monitors implementation of battle stress management plan to ensure HSS is provided to subordinate units. <p>6. S1 Section administers EPW program. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies collection sites within the battalion and those operated by supporting MP element. b. Coordinates evacuation with supporting MP and medical elements. c. Forwards captured enemy medical material to the S4. d. Coordinates CHS requirements with the supporting medical element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. e. Procures collection point(s) guards from subordinate units. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Coordinates evacuation of EPW from the battalion area to MP collection point with S2/S3 Section.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-0170.01-1005	Perform Wartime Strength Accounting at Unit Level
	03-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Forwards all correspondence to appropriate elements. c. Secures classified materials IAW local directives, TSOP, and AR 190-13.</p> <p>3. S1 Section processes promotion recommendations. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-0001.00-1011) a. Forwards all promotion requests to higher HQ S1 Section and servicing personnel elements using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. b. Maintains suspense file on all forwarded promotion actions.</p> <p>4. S1 Section administers awards program. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-0150.00-1008) a. Inspects incoming award recommendations for accuracy and completeness. b. Forwards all recommendations to higher HQ and supporting personnel elements using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. c. Maintains suspense file on all award recommendations.</p> <p>5. S1 Section processes UCMJ actions. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-0150.00-1003, S1-0150.00-1001) a. Prepares flagging actions requested by subordinate units. b. Processes flagging actions from subordinate units. c. Prepares judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents. d. Coordinates judicial acts with subordinate commanders. e. Forwards all documents to higher HQ S1 Section using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. f. Processes all appeals IAW AR 27-10.</p> <p>6. S1 Section processes personnel and finance actions and SIDPERS transactions. a. Verifies changes for accuracy and completeness. b. Prepares SIDPERS input data IAW DA Pam 600-8-1 and 600-8-2. c. Forwards all completed actions to higher HQ S1 Section and supporting personnel servicing element using appropriate BFACS. d. Reports SIDPERS disposition to initiating unit(s) using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>7. S1 Section performs administrative functions.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains leave control log. b. Maintains duty rosters. c. Prepares military correspondences. d. Maintains required functional files. e. Forwards all recurring reports to appropriate elements IAW TSOP and OPORD. f. Maintains required regulations, publications, and SOPs IAW TSOP. g. Provides reproduction services. <p>8. S1 Section provides MWR support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies subordinate MWR requirements. b. Identifies supporting MWR capabilities and resources allocated to the battalion. c. Provides recommendation to the commander on prioritization of MWR support to subordinate units. d. Coordinates MWR support deliveries IAW the commander's priorities. <p>9. S1 Section Coordinates external MWR support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates for newspapers, books, magazines, and other publications with higher HQ S1 Section. b. Coordinates for personal sundry items with the supporting supply element. c. Coordinates for musical, tactical PX, rest, and recuperation support with higher HQ S1 Section. d. Coordinates motion pictures and other entertainment with higher HQ S1 Section. e. Coordinates using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-0001.00-1011	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Promotion
	O3-0150.00-1003	Recommend Enlisted Personnel for Reduction for Inefficiency or Misconduct
	O3-0150.00-1008	Initiate a Recommendation for an Award
	S1-0150.00-1001	Monitor the Suspension of Favorable Personnel Actions - FLAG

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**NONE:**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors casualty data to determine required religious services. b. Provides worship services, memorial ceremonies, services for the dead, sacraments, rites, and ordinances. c. Conducts mass or emergency burials IAW current regulations and directives. d. Provides support to battalion headquarters personnel. e. Requests supplies and additional transportation requirements from S4 Section. <p>3. Unit Ministry Team provides pastoral care to soldiers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides pastoral care that counters battlefield shock and trauma. b. Conducts pastoral counseling that lessens stress and enhance morale. c. Provides religious support for battle fatigue cases. d. Conducts specialized counseling that enhances morale. e. Provides routine pastoral care and counseling to all battalion soldiers. f. Conducts pastoral care to casualties at battle site(s). <p>* 4. Chaplain advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides information on morale and moral climate of the battalion that has been personally verified. b. Briefs commander on moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and procedures. c. Notifies commander immediately of policies perceived as unjust by soldiers. d. Notifies commander of disruptive and potential disruptive social patterns. e. Notifies commander of possible violations of the laws of war. f. Advises commander on policies or procedures affecting soldier rights to the free exercise of religion. <p>* 5. Chaplain advises the commander on ethical issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advises the commander on specific methods of improving the ethical climate within the battalion. b. Briefs commander on ethical aspects of policies and leadership. c. Briefs the commander on soldier training in ethical and moral decision making. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Emphasizes value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth through sermons, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction. e. Performs duties as ethical advocate to the commander in the prevention of dehumanizing treatment of friendly troops, EPW and civilians, the violation of codes of morality, illegal acts, desecration of sacred places, and disrespect for human life. <p>6. Unit Ministry Team provides information on indigenous religions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advises the commander of the impact of indigenous religion(s) in the battalion's mission. b. Advises the commander in developing friendly relations with local religious bodies and civilians. c. Identifies human welfare needs caused by combat on indigenous population. d. Coordinates alleviation of human welfare needs with HN military and civilian religious institutions. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: STAFF SECTIONS
COMMAND SECTION**

TASK: COMBAT BATTLEFIELD STRESS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4303)
 (FM 26-2) (FM 63-23-2) (FM 22-51)
 (FM 22-9) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-2-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support operations have commenced and are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for staff personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress management procedures be implemented. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion applies techniques that counter degradation of morale, training, and physical condition of battalion staff personnel in performance of the mission. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase implementation time of stress prevention measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commanders and leaders perform stress prevention actions. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.12-0002, O3-9001.14-0002, O3-9001.15-0003, S3-9001.18-0002) a. Issue warning orders, OPORDs and FRAGO's to the lowest possible level using radio, wire, or BFACS. b. Provide entire staff an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Brief commander's intentions to all battalion staff personnel. d. Speak positively concerning the battalion's missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the battalion staff.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. Employ an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support. <p>* 2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinate with HQ Company for a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Develop sleep plan IAW FM 22-51. c. Adjust sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation. <p>* 3. Staff element leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Cross-train staff personnel on all critical tasks. b. Develop a plan for rotation of staff personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assign two staff members to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation. <p>* 4. Staff element leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques. (STP 21-II-MQS: S3-9001.18-0002)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Integrate new members into the staff elements immediately. b. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among staff members and leaders. c. Provide instruction on relaxation techniques to all staff personnel. d. Conduct routine after-action stress briefings. <p>* 5. Commander and leaders implement treatment techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develop a plan to deal with mild, seriously-stressed, or battle-fatigued cases. b. Assign staff members who show signs of stress or battle fatigue to simple tasks. c. Direct staff members to be supportive of battle-fatigued or stressed personnel d. Direct movement of staff members showing no signs of improvement to supporting medical facilities. e. Refer for medical evaluation those staff members showing signs of serious stress or battle fatigue. f. Reintegrate RTD staff members into their specific element or section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. Staff personnel employ stress prevention measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Comply with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identify signs of stress or battle fatigue in other staff members. d. Provide immediate buddy aid support. e. Report signs of stress or battle fatigue of other staff members to immediate supervisor. f. Accept new unit members immediately. g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participate in buddy system and after-action stress debriefings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-9001.12-0002	Communicate Effectively
	03-9001.14-0002	Motivate Subordinates to Accomplish Unit Missions
	03-9001.15-0003	Develop a Unit Counseling Program
	S3-9001.18-0002	Minimize Combat Stress

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
BATTALION**

TASK: PERFORM RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4326)

(AR 385-10)
(FM 63-20-1)
(FM 63-23-2)

(FM 3-3)
(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 3-4)
(FM 63-2-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Safety hazards for personnel and equipment exist. The unit is deployed in a tactical environment supporting combat operations. Hazards increase as operations intensify. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All potential safety problems for tasks are identified and either reduced or eliminated. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase risk management implementation times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Commander and leaders identify risk or safety hazards. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9003.02-0001, O3-9003.03-0001) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPLAN/OPORD or FRAGO. b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks. c. Integrate safety into every phase of the planning process. d. Identify the benefits of safety measures to the unit's mission versus the potential cost of risk or safety hazards. e. Conduct continuous assessment of phases of operations for safety and risk reduction. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions. b. Identify all unwarranted risks. c. Compare identified risk to the commander's acceptable risk level based on stated training objectives. d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records. e. Describe operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low). f. Prepare COA that minimizes risk. <p>* 3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9003.02-0001, O3-9003.03-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Select COA that maximizes the operation and minimizes the risk. b. Develop procedures that reduce risk. c. Provide guidance that enhances safety in all phases of operation. d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhances safety and reduces risks. <p>4. Unit personnel employ safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations. b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot. c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and the battalion safety officer using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-9003.02-0001	Manage Accident Risk in Unit Operations
	O3-9003.03-0001	Supervise the Management of Accident Risk in Unit Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: CONDUCT MISSION ANALYSIS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4001)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 100-10) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-4) (FM 63-21-1)
 (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The mission of the battalion is to provide support to the operation. The Support Operations Officer attends higher HQ or the supported unit's staff meeting. The higher HQ commander's planning guidance and restated mission have been secured. Upon receipt of the new mission, the commander briefs the XO. The XO assembles principal staff members in preparation for mission analysis. Current personnel, supplies, and equipment status reports for all subordinate elements are available. Once higher HQ COA and tentative support requirements have been received, the Support Operations Section coordinates with the higher HQ staff elements concerning additional support requirements and with the S2/S3 Section concerning tentative task organization of the battalion. Mission analysis is dynamic and continuous; therefore, it is subject to change at anytime based upon new information, changing situations, and change of commander's guidance. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions both Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Mission analysis results in the development of a plan that supports the higher HQ commander's intent and concept of operations. Mission analysis is completed within the time established by the XO. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase mission analysis completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. XO supervises staff mission analysis. a. Organizes staff to conduct mission analysis.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Translates major specified and implied tasks to specific objectives based on intent of next two higher command echelons. c. Provides mission analysis guidance to staff based on the commander's guidance. d. Inspects results of staff mission analysis for compliance with commander's guidance. e. Identifies time and place for staff's mission analysis briefing to commander. <p>* 2. Support Operations Officer coordinates support planning with supported elements. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides current support capabilities and limitations of the battalion. b. Provides estimated degradation of support for various threat and MOPP levels. c. Provides resolutions for all previously identified support shortfalls. d. Identifies specific force and structure to be supported, to include tentative augmentations. e. Identifies projected location of the proposed support sites. f. Identifies estimated times for deployment of battalion and other units. <p>* 3. Staff Officers conduct preliminary staff mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provide information update(s) to commander on areas that are critical to mission accomplishment. b. Identify mission and intent of commanders of the next two higher HQ. c. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to new mission with other staff sections. d. Identify tentative force structure and size to be supported. e. Record specified tasks in higher HQ and supported unit's OPLANs. f. Identify all implied tasks that must be accomplished to perform the overall mission or specified tasks. <p>* 4. Support Operations Officer provides input for development of higher HQ OPLAN. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-9007.01-0250, O3-9001.12-0003)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Provides information briefing to higher HQ staff element, which includes projected locations of supported elements, projected requirements, logistics and combat health service support distribution plan and special operations.</p> <p>b. Provides current status of assets and task organization to higher HQ.</p> <p>* 5. Staff Officers finalize staff mission analysis. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013, O1-9007.01-0250)</p> <p>a. Select essential tasks that are necessary to accomplish overall mission based on higher HQ commander's intent.</p> <p>b. List all constraints and restrictions on actions and activities.</p> <p>c. List all information relating to the NBC threats on the battlefield.</p> <p>d. Prepare preliminary mission statement (S2/S3).</p> <p>e. Brief staff mission analysis results to commander.</p> <p>* 6. Commander completes mission analysis.</p> <p>a. Restates mission in clear, concise statements of tasks in the order they are to be accomplished.</p> <p>b. Provides acceptable levels of risk for mission accomplishment.</p> <p>c. Provides guidance on the parameters for conducting analysis in specific areas.</p> <p>d. States specific COA to be or not to be pursued by the staff.</p> <p>e. Directs S2/S3 to issue warning notice to all subordinate units informing them of pending operations.</p> <p>* 7. XO and S2/S3 perform a time analysis.</p> <p>a. Calculate total time remaining before execution of upcoming operations.</p> <p>b. Identify all steps in the command estimate process.</p> <p>c. Assign time limitations for each step in the command estimate process that does not exceed one-third of the total time remaining before execution.</p> <p>d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-3303.03-0013	Prepare Battalion Combat Orders
	O1-9007.01-0250	Brief to Inform, Persuade, or Direct
	O3-9001.12-0003	Communicate Effectively as a Commander or Staff Officer
	O3-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identifies gaps in current intelligence using CCIR and commander's intent to set priorities. c. Identifies initial collection requirements. d. Assembles materials and information required to conduct IPB. e. Forwards pertinent information to other staff sections. <p>2. S2/S3 Section defines the battlefield environment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies the limits of the AO. b. Identifies the limits of the area of interest. c. Coordinates input on the battlefield environment with other staff sections. d. Identifies significant characteristics of the battlefield environment that affect the specific area of responsibility in coordination with each staff section. e. Identifies those characteristics of the battlefield that require in-depth evaluation. <p>3. S2/S3 Section evaluates the battlefield's effects upon COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies effects of terrain on the battalion's operations. b. Identifies the effects of weather upon battalion's operations. c. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics upon battalion's operations. d. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on friendly COA. e. Identifies the effects of terrain on threat COA. f. Identifies the effects of weather on threat COA. g. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics on threat COA. h. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on threat COA. i. Develops population status overlay, weather analysis matrix, and other overlays, as required, using ASAS. <p>4. S2/S3 Section evaluates the threat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducts a threat order of battle analysis for each type of conventional or unconventional units that might be faced. b. Develops a threat COA model. <p>5. S2/S3 Section determines threat COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all rational COA available to the threat. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prioritizes each available COA. c. Develops a comprehensive, detailed set of threat COA. d. Prepares situation templates for each COA available to the threat. e. Prepares event template. f. Prepares decision support template for rear CP. 6. S2/S3 Section prepares analysis of the AO. a. Consolidates the IPB data into appropriate format IAW FM 101-5. b. Forwards draft Analysis of the AO to S2/S3 for review and approval. c. Makes appropriate changes as instructed by the S2/S3 and XO. d. Forwards corrected analysis of the AO to the S2/S3 for signature. e. Distributes analysis of AO, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Prepares an unconventional warfare situation map that shows probable operating areas, encampments, and movement routes for unconventional threat forces.</p> <p>g. Prepares a population status overlay that shows areas with a high potential for civil unrest and/or concentrations of enemy sympathizers.</p> <p>h. Requests intelligence information required to fill gaps identified in the database from the higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section performs threat integration.</p> <p>a. Prepares a situation template showing unit and equipment dispositions, frontages, depths, and echelon spacing adjusted for terrain and weather factors.</p> <p>b. Prepares an event template showing NAI along high-speed avenues of approach into the support area.</p> <p>c. Prepares a decision support template showing points where a decision is required based on eat action and rate of movement.</p> <p>d. Lists threat's most likely COA in their probable order of adoption.</p> <p>e. Coordinates threat integration products with higher HQ staff element.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section arrays friendly force, battalion HQ, and its subordinate units.</p> <p>a. Identifies maneuver forces and their availability in the area of interest.</p> <p>b. Identifies all supporting CSS units in the area of interest.</p> <p>c. Prepares analog/digital map overlay showing array of friendly units based on mission requirements and guidance from the commander.</p> <p>* 4. S2/S3 selects feasible COA. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.10-0004, O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <p>a. Identifies specific guidance from the higher HQ OPLAN.</p> <p>b. Lists schemes of support that sustains supported units in area of responsibility.</p> <p>c. Identifies tentative arrangements for command, control, and communications.</p> <p>d. Assigns tentative missions consistent with a specific subordinate element's capability.</p> <p>e. Lists a minimum of two feasible COA.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Briefs commander and XO on the selected COA for approval or revision. g. Disseminates approved feasible COA to all other staff sections using appropriate Battlefield Functional Area Command and Control system.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-9001.10-0004	Apply the Ethical Decision-Making Process as a Commander or Staff Officer
	O3-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process
	S3-8961.00-0001	Describe Rear Operations Doctrine Leadership
	S3-8987.01-0001	Describe the Categories of Threat
	S3-8988.01-0001	Describe Regional and Special Threats

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: List addresses applicable PIR/IR received from higher HQ, threat infiltration activities, possible targets for threat activities, and probable type and size force the threat may use against these targets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Prepares intelligence collection work sheet that lists all PIR/IR, NAI, indicators, and available collection agencies. f. Requests additional intelligence, based on PIR/IR and current holdings, from collection agencies listed in collection work sheet. <p>2. S2/S3 Section assembles required intelligence information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Extracts required information from current intelligence holdings, such as the S2 workbook, situation maps, policy files and journals, and INTSUM. b. Revises intelligence collection work sheets to reflect changes in collection requirements. c. Identifies pertinence of all incoming information in terms of reliability and credibility factors. d. Integrates incoming information into existing files and work sheets. <p>3. S2/S3 Section develops reference and paragraph 1, Mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes commander's restated mission. <p>4. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 2, The Area of Operations. (STP 21-II-MQS: S3-8987.01-0001, S3-8988.01-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists weather report, climatic information, and light data with moon phase. b. Lists the weather effects on visibility, trafficability, personnel, equipment, threat capabilities, and friendly COA. c. Lists the terrain effects on the ability of a force to obtain long and short range observation and direct fire. d. Lists the terrain effects on the terminal impact of direct weapons. e. Lists the terrain effects on concealment from ground and air observations, and cover from direct and indirect fire. f. Lists threat avenues of approach. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. Identifies probable size and type threat force that could traverse the avenues of approach. h. Identifies terrain factors effecting placement of the battalion and subordinate units. i. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on threat capabilities and COA. j. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on battalion's mission and COA. <p>5. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 3, Enemy Situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all map overlays and previously published documents that show threat situation and positions. b. Lists all threat units by unit designation with organizational structure. c. Summarizes current threat activities that might serve as indicators to future actions. d. Lists threat deviations from known doctrine, practices, and principles of war and known personnel and equipment weaknesses. e. Lists civilian populace attitudes toward friendly and threat forces as they relate to hindrance or accomplishment of the battalion's mission. <p>6. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 4, Enemy Capabilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists the basic maneuver capabilities to include what, when, where, and in what strength, for each capability. b. Lists conclusions on threat capabilities and probability of adoption of a COA, including rationale. c. Lists capabilities that could make the accomplishment of the battalion's mission highly doubtful or impossible. d. List indicators for possible use of air and NBC weapons and DE devices. <p>7. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 5, Conclusions. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.10-0004)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Summarizes total effects of the AO on friendly COA based on previous analysis. b. Lists the most probable threat COA in the order of relative probability of adoption based on paragraphs 2, 3, and 4. c. Lists all threat peculiarities and weaknesses that can be exploited by battalion or higher levels. d. Lists any acknowledgment instructions, if necessary. e. Lists all applicable annexes. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 8. S2/S3 approves intelligence estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies contents for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Forwards intelligence estimate to XO for review and approval or modification. c. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). <p>9. S2/S3 Section distributes the intelligence estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards intelligence estimate to S2/S3 for signature. c. Distributes intelligence estimate to other staff sections using appropriate BFACS. d. Forwards intelligence estimate to next higher HQ using radio, courier, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-9001.10-0004	Apply the Ethical Decision-Making Process as a Commander or Staff Officer
	S3-8987.01-0001	Describe the Categories of Threat
	S3-8988.01-0001	Describe Regional and Special Threats

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION**TASK: DEVELOP PERSONNEL ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4005)**

(FM 12-06)

(FM 100-10)

(FM 101-5)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the battalion intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitation for estimates. S1 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, wire, digital means, and courier. The personnel estimate is distributed to the battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or FM 101-5. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase personnel estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S1 Section determines information requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analyses of the AO, and higher HQ personnel summaries. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies where required information can be obtained. 2. S1 Section assembles required information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with the S2/S3 Section. b. Coordinates logistics information requirements with S4 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S1 workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element. <p>3. S1 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission. <p>4. S1 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares brief summary that references the appropriate intelligence document. b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on personnel activities. c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence personnel activities. d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3. e. Lists disposition of logistics units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation. f. Lists projected logistics developments that influence personnel operations. g. Lists disposition of civil affairs units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation. h. Lists projected CMO developments likely to influence personnel operations. i. Prepares troop preparedness situation subparagraph. <p>NOTE: Subparagraph includes: unit strength, maintenance, replacements, noncombat matters, soldier personnel readiness, service support, organizational climate, commitment, and cohesion factors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> j. Lists all assumptions based on initial planning guidance. k. Prepares casualty estimate for each COA. <p>5. S1 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Lists problem areas, trends, and deficiencies impacting on troop preparedness of each COA.</p> <p>6. S1 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <p>a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the personnel mission.</p> <p>b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA.</p> <p>7. S1 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions.</p> <p>a. States supportability of mission from a personnel viewpoint.</p> <p>b. Selects COA that can be supported from the personnel standpoint.</p> <p>c. Lists major personnel deficiencies that require the commander's attention.</p> <p>d. Recommends specific methods for eliminating or reducing the effects of these major deficiencies.</p> <p>*8. S1 approves personnel estimate.</p> <p>a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written).</p> <p>9. S1 Section distributes the personnel estimate.</p> <p>a. Incorporates comments, if required.</p> <p>b. Forwards personnel estimate to S1 for signature.</p> <p>c. Forwards personnel estimate to other staff sections.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION**TASK:** DEVELOP LOGISTICS ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4006)

(FM 63-20-1)

(FM 100-10)

(FM 101-5)

(FM 63-21-1)

(FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The logistics estimate addresses internal battalion logistics only. S4 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, wire, digital, and courier. The logistics estimate is distributed to battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistics estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or FM 101-5 (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase logistics estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S4 Section determines information requirements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analysis of the AO, and higher HQ logistics summaries. b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and documents where required information can be obtained. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. S4 Section assembles required information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with S2/S3 Section. b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S4 workbook, CSSCS, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Requests additional information requirement support from higher HQ staff element. <p>3. S4 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission. <p>4. S4 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references. b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on internal logistics activities. c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence internal logistics activities. d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3 Section. e. Lists disposition of personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the internal logistics situation. f. Lists projected developments within the personnel field likely to influence internal logistics operations. g. Lists disposition of CMO units that have an effect on internal logistics situation. h. Lists developments within the CMO field likely to influence internal logistics operations. i. Prepares a general statement about present equipment on hand, supply status and maintenance posture. <p>NOTE: Statement includes; repair times, posture of maintenance elements, impact of Class VII and IX on maintenance capability, and the status of Class VII items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> j. Lists overall status of all classes of supply (obtained from CSSCS) and transportation assets. k. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. S4 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculates the sufficiency of proposed area for internal logistics operations. b. Lists all COA provided by S2/S3 Section. c. Lists logistics and tactical impact for each COA. <p>6. S4 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the internal logistics mission. b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA. <p>NOTE: Analysis includes methods and modifications for overcoming deficiencies in each COA.</p> <p>7. S4 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. States mission supportability from an internal logistics viewpoint. b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an internal logistics standpoint. <p>* 8. S4 approves logistics estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). <p>9. S4 Section distributes the logistics estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards logistics estimate to S4 for signature. c. Forwards logistics estimate to other battalion staff sections. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O3-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where required information can be obtained. <p>2. Support Operations Section assembles required information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with S2/S3 Section. b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section. c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as Support Operations workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals. d. Identifies tentative supported units. e. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element. <p>3. Support Operations Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Lists the commander's restated mission. <p>4. Support Operations Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references. b. Lists the effects of the characteristics of the AO on support operations and mission accomplishment. c. States the affects of the intelligence situation on support activities. d. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence support activities. e. Lists all COA provided by S2/S3. f. Lists disposition of all personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the support situation. g. Lists projected developments within the personnel and internal logistics field that could influence support operations. h. Lists disposition of CMO operations that have an effect on the support situation. i. Lists developments within the CMO field that could influence support operations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> j. Provides overall status of logistics and combat health services capabilities, distribution systems and any shortfalls that may impact on support operations. k. Provides current situation, status, and restrictions on the use of foreign nation resources. l. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance. <p>5. Support Operations Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculates sufficiency of proposed area for support operations. b. Calculates total requirements to support proposed responsibility using CSSCS. c. Lists required organizational structure for each approved COA. d. Lists support deficiencies for each COA. <p>6. Support Operations Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the support mission. b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA. <p>7. Support Operations Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. States supportability of mission from an external support viewpoint. b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an external support viewpoint. <p>* 8. Support Operations Officer approves support operations estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written). <p>9. Support Operations Section distributes the support operations estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Incorporates comments, if required. b. Forwards support operations estimate to Support Operations Officer for signature. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Forwards support operations estimate to other battalion staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S6 SECTION

TASK: DEVELOP SUPPORTING COMMANDER'S [OPERATION] ESTIMATE (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4008)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 100-10) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. All primary staff estimates are completed. Each staff section has provided its recommended COA. The higher HQ and battalion's analyses of the AO and NBC Vulnerability Analysis are available. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, wire, digital means, and courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supporting commander's (operation) estimate is prepared within the time prescribed in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in FM 101-5 or TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the supporting commander's (operation) estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section conducts an NBC Vulnerability Analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies potential battalion AO. b. Identifies all pertinent information required to perform the analysis. c. Identifies potential threat nuclear, chemical or biological weapons delivery systems. NOTE: Delivery system information should include probable yield(s) and type agents associated with the threat and the range and location of delivery systems, if known.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Identifies location, size, shape, and posture of all subordinate units being analyzed. e. Selects appropriate vulnerability radii. f. Selects best nuclear vulnerability technique. g. Identifies "worst case" ground zero. h. Estimates fractional coverage. i. Compares estimated percentage of casualties or damage to commander's acceptable loss criteria. j. Recommends COA to decrease unit's vulnerability or increase protection. k. Forwards NBC Vulnerability Analysis to S2/S3 for approval or modification. <p>2. S6 Section prepares communications estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists the COA provided by the S2/S3. b. Conducts a map reconnaissance to identify communications/automation limitations. c. Identifies current status of all battalion communications/automation equipment. d. Lists terrain factors that may affect communication/automation compatibility or vulnerability. e. Lists communications/automation factors that may be affected by the AO, enemy disposition and strength, enemy capabilities, or other information technology activities. f. Coordinates with S4 Section for the status of incoming communications/automation equipment. g. Coordinates with the supporting communications/automation element to identify the status of all nonoperational equipment. h. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA. i. Lists methods to eliminate or overcome all deficiencies. j. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA. k. Selects best COA to accomplish mission from a communications viewpoint. l. Forwards communications estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification. <p>3. S2/S3 Section determines information requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies information requirements by reviewing the battalion and higher HQ commanders' restated missions and OPLAN. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP. c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where additional information requirements may be obtained. d. Identifies special requirements by reviewing other staff estimates. <p>4. S2/S3 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate. b. Lists the commander's restated mission. <p>5. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Course of Action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists the nature of the operations to be supported. b. Lists the composition and locations of supported units. c. Lists peculiar or unusual support requirements and other factors pertaining to the supported force that affect the scope and size of the support mission. d. Lists the effects of the AO on the support mission. e. Lists all enemy capabilities that are a threat to the support mission. f. Lists aspects of the friendly situation that provide the basis for anticipated difficulties in the battalion's capability to provide required support. g. Lists phases of the operations that require a reassessment of support. h. Lists special support requirements and the phase of the operations in which they occur. i. Lists special support techniques or procedures required because of tactical operations. j. Lists the effects of logistic, personnel, and CMO situations within the battalion on mission accomplishment. k. Lists all projected difficulties that may influence the accomplishment of the mission. l. Lists all approved feasible COA. <p>6. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-9001.13-0001)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies the probable effect of each significant difficulty on the success of each COA. b. Prepares a COA matrix showing the advantages and disadvantages of each COA. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Assigns probability of success to each COA.</p> <p>7. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action.</p> <p>a. Conducts comparative analysis of the COA.</p> <p>b. Selects best COA.</p> <p>8. S2/S3 Section staffs supporting commander's (operation) estimate for review and comments.</p> <p>a. Forwards estimate to other battalion staff sections for review and/or comments.</p> <p>b. Forwards reviewed estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification.</p> <p>c. Resolves differences in conclusions concerning recommended COA prior to briefing the commander.</p> <p>9. Command Section conducts commander's decision briefing.</p> <p>a. Organizes staff for commander's decision briefing.</p> <p>b. Briefs commander on all aspects of the supporting commander's (operation) estimate.</p> <p>*10. Commander provides decision and concept of operations.</p> <p>a. Modifies staff recommendations, if required.</p> <p>b. Provides guidance for a new COA, if required.</p> <p>c. Approves staff recommendations.</p> <p>d. Translates the selected COA into a statement which describes the, who, what, when, where, how, and why.</p> <p>e. Directs S2/S3 to issue warning order to subordinate units using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>NOTE: Warning order includes the following minimum information: mission, time of execution, earliest time of movement, time and location of OPLAN issue, and time check.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: PREPARE OPERATIONS PLAN/OPERATIONS ORDER AND ANNEXES (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4009)

(FM 63-20-1) (FM 101-5) (FM 21-31)
(FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The supporting commander's (operation) estimate is approved. The commander has provided his decision and concept of operations. The XO assigns preparation responsibilities for OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, wire, digitally, and by courier. OPLAN becomes OPORD upon implementation. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: OPLAN/OPORD and annexes are prepared IAW FM 101-5 within the time prescribed by the commander or XO. OPLAN/OPORD supports and articulates the commander's intent. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPLAN/OPORD and annexes completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization sections. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists maps, charts, sketches, or other documents used in preparation and required for complete understanding of OPLAN. b. Transcribes time zone consistent with higher HQ OPLAN. c. Lists battalion task organization, time, and effective date. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. S2/S3 and Support Operations Sections draft paragraph 1, Situation (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists composition, disposition, location, estimated strength, identification, and capabilities of enemy forces that can influence the battalion's logistics and combat health service support mission. b. Lists in order by higher, adjacent, supporting, and reinforcing friendly forces that influence support operations. <p>NOTE: List consists of units not previously named in the Task Organization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Lists units attached to or detached from the battalion, with their attachment or detachment effective time, if applicable. d. Lists commander's assumptions that may exist at the time the OPLAN becomes an OPORD. <p>3. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. States tasks to be accomplished that address the who, what, when, where and time length of operation. b. States the mission based on the commander's guidance and intent. <p>4. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. States the commander's intention in sufficient detail to ensure appropriate actions by subordinate units. b. States the commander's concept of operations for the execution of support mission from start to finish. c. Lists the scheme of support that includes placement, movement, and primary mission of each subordinate unit. d. Lists all details of coordination and control applicable to two or more units of the battalion including troop safety measures, MOPP levels, and restriction on use of chemical weapons. <p>5. Support Operations, S1, and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Update battle rosters and personnel status charts to reflect new task organization. b. Develop estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Prepare "personnel" portion of paragraph 4, Service Support. d. Provide support instructions, logistics and combat health service support distribution schemes and other arrangements that support the operations and are of primary interests to subordinate units. e. Reference higher HQ service support paragraph, when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher HQ service support paragraph. <p>6. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-3303.03-0013)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists location of the CP, alternate CP, and liaison requirements different than those stated in TSOP. b. Lists all information technologies including index of the effective SOI/SSI and instructions for the use of local area networks, automation, radio, pyrotechnics, or restriction on the employment of analog or digital communications. c. Provides acknowledgement instructions, commander's signature block, authentication section, and distribution instructions. <p>7. S2/S3 Section task organizes subordinate units/elements for the support mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies total support requirements by reviewing the commander's planning guidance and the restated mission. b. Identifies unit availability by inspecting Higher HQ OPLAN. c. Identifies where to reduce or add units or elements by reviewing supported forces scheme of maneuver and terrain factors. d. Organizes subordinate units based on their capability to accommodate the support mission. <p>8. S2/S3 Section drafts the task organization annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Lists each assigned or attached unit and their tentative location and appropriate time of attachment. b. Forwards annex to the S2/S3 for approval or modification. c. Distributes annex to all appropriate staff sections and organic and attached units using appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Attaches task organization annex to the OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>9. S2/S3 Section drafts an operations overlay.</p> <p>a. States map reference data, effective date, and purpose of the overlay.</p> <p>b. Lists classification markings and downgrading instructions, if applicable.</p> <p>c. Applies overlay plotting techniques outlined in FM 21-31.</p> <p>d. Plots boundaries, supporting, supported, and subordinate units' locations within 50 meters.</p> <p>e. Affixes graphic portrayal of axis of advance, supply routes, and unit locations.</p> <p>f. Forwards operations overlay to the S2/S3 for approval or modification using MCS.</p> <p>g. Attaches overlay to the OPLAN/OPORD as an annex.</p> <p>10. S2/S3 Section consolidates staff input.</p> <p>a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.</p> <p>b. Prepares revised copy of OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.</p> <p>11. S2/S3 Section distributes the OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>a. Prepares appropriate number copies of OPLAN/OPORD.</p> <p>b. Distributes OPLAN/OPORD to all appropriate staff sections, organic, and attached units using MCS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	01-3303.03-0013	Prepare Battalion Combat Orders

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. S2/S3 Section selects tentative march route(s). (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-326-0515, 071-331-0820)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all possible routes by conducting map reconnaissance. b. Identifies possible tactical implications for all possible routes in close coordination with the supporting rear operations element. c. Identifies possible problem areas and road trafficability from engineer road classification overlays and intelligence summaries. d. Conducts comparative analysis of all possible routes. e. Selects best possible route(s). f. Coordinates route selection with higher HQ and other battalion staff sections using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. g. Forwards route(s) selection to S2/S3 for approval or modification. <p>3. S2/S3 Section directs route reconnaissance activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or appropriate BFACS. b. Requests MP route reconnaissance overlay. c. Tasks subordinate units to conduct reconnaissance of tentative march routes using radio, wire, or MTS. d. Briefs HQ company reconnaissance leader. e. Monitors movement and activities of all reconnaissance parties to ensure compliance with instructions and TSOP using radio, MTS or appropriate BFACS. f. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance leader upon completion of mission. <p>4. S2/S3 Section selects specific march route(s). (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-7300.75-0500)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates all route reconnaissance party(s) data. b. Conducts comparative analysis of all data for each tentative route. c. Selects primary and secondary route(s) for each subordinate element. d. Coordinates battalion HQ route with HQ company commander. e. Prepares analog/digital overlays using subordinate unit reconnaissance data. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Provides reconnaissance and route selection update to the commander.</p> <p>g. Forwards all reconnaissance data to higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units using radio, wire, MTS or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>5. S4 Section coordinates internal support requirements for move. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-7300.75-0500)</p> <p>a. Coordinates supply support with subordinate and attached units.</p> <p>b. Coordinates maintenance support with subordinate and attached units.</p> <p>c. Coordinates transportation support with subordinate and attached units.</p> <p>d. Coordinates food service support with subordinate and attached units.</p> <p>6. S2/S3 Section coordinates external movement support requirements. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-7300.75-0500)</p> <p>a. Coordinates additional external transportation requirements with the responsible movement control agency.</p> <p>b. Coordinates route clearances with responsible movement control agency or supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation requirements and procedures with supporting medical element.</p> <p>d. Coordinates security escort, fire support, and CAS requirements with supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>e. Coordinates MP traffic control support with supporting MP element and rear operations element.</p> <p>f. Coordinates decontamination requirements with higher HQ chemical officer.</p> <p>g. Coordinates smoke requirements with higher HQ chemical officer.</p> <p>h. Coordinates using radio, wire, MTS, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>7. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement schemes for HQ company.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with HQ company commander for the task organization and order of march for HQ company.</p> <p>b. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance personnel.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays for HQ company.</p> <p>d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with the HQ company commander.</p> <p>8. Support Operations Section develops plan.</p> <p>a. Calculates projected support requirements until new operational sites are established by evaluating current supported units' assets.</p> <p>b. Coordinates anticipated requirements with supported units in current AO.</p> <p>c. Provides recommendations for order of movement for companies/detachments and specific shuttling of high priority support assets.</p> <p>d. Establishes notification procedures to alert customers of what facilities will be available during movement.</p> <p>9. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement scheme for move. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-7300.75-0500)</p> <p>a. Identifies the task organization for movement with critical supplies and equipment dispersed throughout all elements.</p> <p>b. Assigns order of march for move by placing elements of critical support items in the first serial.</p> <p>c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays.</p> <p>NOTE: Under MOPP4 conditions, road movement tables should be increased a minimum of 3 times the normal movement time.</p> <p>d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with all subordinate units' commanders using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>10. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization Sections.</p> <p>a. Lists all maps and overlays, charts, or other documents required to understand the order.</p> <p>b. Transcribes time zone used throughout from higher HQ OPLAN.</p> <p>c. Identifies task organization of battalion as directed by S2/S3.</p> <p>11. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 1, Situation.</p> <p>a. Provides weather forecast for duration of move and its effect on route(s).</p> <p>b. Provides terrain analysis and its effects on the move.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Lists enemy disposition, strength, and capability factors affecting battalion movement.</p> <p>d. Lists all friendly units that provide support to the battalion during the move.</p> <p>e. Lists attachments and detachments initiated for movement purposes only.</p> <p>12. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission.</p> <p>a. States those tasks to be accomplished, addressing who, what, when, why, and where.</p> <p>b. Provides overall movement mission statement that includes the purpose of movement and the start times.</p> <p>13. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution.</p> <p>a. Provides brief statement on the concept of the move.</p> <p>b. Lists all subordinate elements' taskings required to complete battalion move.</p> <p>c. Lists all coordinating instructions applicable to two or more companies and the battalion HQ.</p> <p>14. S2/S3 and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support.</p> <p>a. Lists all units and the service support they provide to at least two subordinate units and the battalion HQ.</p> <p>b. Lists all traffic control support that affects at least two subordinate units and battalion HQ.</p> <p>c. Lists the HQ company's service support functions.</p> <p>15. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal and the Authentication Section.</p> <p>a. Lists position of command group in the HQ company move and the location of battalion HQ during the battalion move.</p> <p>b. Lists CP closing and opening times and new location.</p> <p>c. Lists all analog and digital communications information.</p> <p>NOTE: List includes effective SOI/SSI, instructions on the use of radio, digital devices, and pyrotechnics, and any restrictions or special communications procedures.</p> <p>d. Lists acknowledgement instructions appropriate signature block, and distribution instructions.</p> <p>16. S2/S3 Section distributes movement order using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>a. Coordinates movement order review with other battalion staff sections.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Forwards draft movement order to the S2/S3 for approval or modifications. c. Distributes approved movement order to appropriate staff sections, subordinate, and attached units using appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	Select a Movement Route Using a Map
	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
STP 21-II-MQS	01-7300.75-0500	Plan Convoy Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: STAFF SECTIONS

TASK: DEVELOP OCCUPATION PLAN (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4011)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 3-3)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The XO has assigned responsibility for planning the occupation of new AO to the staff. The S2/S3 has primary responsibility in coordination with other battalion staff sections. The battalion TSOP has been updated to accommodate changing procedural requirements. Subordinate units' missions have been identified. Tentative subordinate units and battalion HQ locations have been designated. Current analog/digital situation maps are available. Higher HQ staff element has provided reconnaissance information furnished by units previously located in the general area. Higher HQ and battalion Analyses of the AO are available. Some areas selected may be in or around cities or towns. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Occupation plan is prepared IAW TSOP and is in compliance with commander's guidance. The areas selected support subordinate units and battalion HQ personnel, equipment, and mission requirements. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase occupation plan completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section verifies the suitability of the new area by ground or map reconnaissance. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-331-0820) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculates space requirements for number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area. b. Identifies space availability to support number and type of elements, and base facilities proposed in the new area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Identifies ability of area to support the battalion's equipment and vehicles. d. Identifies accessibility of roads and size of areas around buildings (MOUT environment). e. Identifies availability of area cover and concealment. f. Identifies area suitability for helicopter landing sites. <p>2. Staff Sections provide a support analysis of tentative operational areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify specific functional area advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas by reviewing higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO. b. Perform analog and digital communications support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. c. Perform CHS analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. d. Perform NBC defense analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. e. Perform ADP analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. f. Perform OPSEC analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed area. g. Perform support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas. h. Forward analysis reports to S2/S3 Section. <p>3. S2/S3 Section selects final sites for subordinate units and the battalion HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS. b. Identifies specific missions for each subordinate unit in the battalion. c. Identifies proposed locations of all subordinate units and battalion HQ. d. Posts proposed battalion HQ and subordinate units' positions on the analog/digital situation map(s). e. Coordinates proposed site selections with subordinate units and battalion staff using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. f. Briefs proposed sites and rationale to the commander or XO for approval or modifications. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Forwards approved site selections to higher HQ, battalion staff, and subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>h. Prepares analog/digital map overlays with all appropriate boundaries, supply routes, and unit locations using symbols IAW FM 101-5-1.</p> <p>4. S2/S3 Section formulates a tentative battalion and CP area layout plan.</p> <p>a. Designates a general location for the LOC site.</p> <p>b. Designates location of CP elements.</p> <p>c. Designates location of subordinate units.</p> <p>d. Prepares a traffic circulation plan that depicts the traffic pattern for key roads in the battalion area and the CP area.</p> <p>e. Prepares communication plan that shows wire diagrams that connect all subordinate elements and includes instructions for runners system until wire communications are operational.</p> <p>f. Prepares a hasty security plan that provides minimum requirements for all subordinate units.</p> <p>g. Disseminates battalion layout plan to all subordinate units and the battalion advance/quartering party leader using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>5. S2/S3 Section plans battalion advance/quartering party activities.</p> <p>a. Identifies battalion advance/quartering party's personnel and equipment composition and limitations from the TSOP.</p> <p>b. Provides advance/quartering party personnel, equipment, and vehicle limitations to each subordinate unit.</p> <p>c. Provides assembly area location and reporting times to each subordinate unit.</p> <p>d. Coordinates forward staff personnel requirements with each staff section and the XO.</p> <p>e. Identifies all area preparation tasks that are not included in the TSOP.</p> <p>f. Briefs battalion advance/quartering party leader on area preparation, vehicles, equipment, and options caused by change in METT-TC.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Identifies NBC threat capabilities and recommended countermeasures by reviewing higher HQ NBC vulnerability analysis. c. Identifies potential targets in the battalion area for NBC weapons. <p>2. S2/S3 Section prepares NBC defense plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes procedures and measures that reduce unit vulnerability through terrain shielding and increased protective measures. b. Specifies levels of protection that correspond with the NBC threat, including MOPP levels. c. Establishes procedures for receiving and submitting reports on threat use of NBC weapons, if different from those in the TSOP. d. Develops monitoring and survey plans that establish policies and procedures for subordinate units' survey, monitor, and decontamination teams' operations. e. Develops personnel, equipment, and support site decontamination plan that establishes priorities for decontamination in coordination with the Support Operations Section. f. Establishes coordination procedures for requesting additional support. g. Provides commander's radiation exposure guidance. h. Establishes nuclear, biological and chemical medical evacuation and treatment support procedures in coordination with S1 and the supporting medical element. i. Establishes alternate methods and levels of support in coordination with Support Operations Section. j. Consolidates NBC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP. k. Forwards the NBC defense plan to the S2/S3 for approval or modification. l. Disseminates the NBC defense plan to all appropriate staffs sections and subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>3. S2/S3 Section prepares OPSEC plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies established policies and procedures in the battalion TSOP. b. Identifies threat intelligence collection capabilities. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identifies EEFI indicators that affect or compromise information. d. Identifies all countermeasures and deception requirements, including defense against DE devices. e. Transcribes required information from higher HQ OPSEC annexes to OPLAN. f. Consolidates OPSEC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP. g. Forwards draft OPSEC plan to S2/S3 for approval or modifications. h. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all battalion staff sections and subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: S6 SECTION
 S4 SECTION
 COMMAND SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION

TASK: LAN REAR OPERATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4014)
 (FM 100-10) (FM 100-15) (FM 101-5)
 (FM 3-4) (FM 63-20-1) (FM 63-21-1)
 (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The XO assigns responsibilities for the preparation of rear operations annex to S2/S3. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the rear operations annex. The responsible rear operations command and control element has provided input for the battalion's participation and integration into rear operations. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by radio, wire, digital, and courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear operations annex is prepared IAW FM 101-5 and TSOP, and conforms to the commander's and supporting rear operation element's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase rear operations annex completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S2/S3 Section develops direct and indirect fire plan. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 061-283-1002, 061-283-6003, STP 21-II-MQS: S3-9060.00-1000)		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies boundaries as assigned by the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations command and control element.</p> <p>b. Identifies probable enemy avenues of approach and their effects on the battalion's area of responsibility.</p> <p>c. Assigns boundaries to all subordinate units and separate elements using radio, wire or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>NOTE: Boundaries should be based on number of personnel assigned, type of weapons systems, mission of unit and METT-TC.</p> <p>d. Identifies weapon systems that are available to the battalion in coordination with the supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>e. Identifies probable engagement areas.</p> <p>f. Selects target reference points in coordination with designated fire support element.</p> <p>g. Prioritizes defense of sustainment bases and facilities in coordination with the Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>h. Develops fire support request and coordination measures in coordination with designated fire support element.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section develops mobility and countermobility plan. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-1940.00-1001)</p> <p>a. Identifies all obstacle constraints and restrictions in the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations element's plan.</p> <p>b. Identifies all possible obstacles by location and type.</p> <p>c. Identifies all available obstacle assets.</p> <p>d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the S4 and supporting engineer element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section develops air defense plan. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-0401.20-0001)</p> <p>a. Identifies all established air defense policies and procedures in the higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD and the battalion TSOP.</p> <p>b. Identifies probable air avenues of approach.</p> <p>c. Establishes air defense priorities for designated areas and facilities in coordination with supporting rear operations and air defense elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Establishes air defense assistance coordination measures. e. Establishes air defense warning signals, if different than those set forth in TSOP. <p>4. S2/S3 Section develops battalion internal response force plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies response force composition and requirements in the TSOP. b. Revises response force structure and subordinate units' taskings as dictated by current tactical situation. c. Identifies battalion assembly point location(s). d. Coordinates additional equipment/supply requirements with the S4 Section. e. Develops response force training plan. f. Tasks subordinate elements to provide required personnel and equipment for battalion response force based on present for duty strength and current mission. <p>5. S6 Section develops communications plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Develops intra-base cluster analog and digital communications plan that encompasses all units located within the battalion's area of responsibility. b. Develops external analog and digital communications plan that interfaces with higher HQ, supporting rear operations element, fire support, and air support elements. c. Designates rear operations passwords, call signs, frequencies, and procedures. d. Coordinates overall analog and digital communications plan with supporting signal element and supporting rear operations element. e. Establishes a messenger system with runner as a backup communications system. <p>6. S4 Section develops logistics plan in coordination with S1 Section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculates tentative logistics requirements for response force and external reaction forces. b. Designates responsibility for resupply of equipment and supplies to specific subordinate units. c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation plan with the supporting medical element. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>7. S2/S3 Section coordinates rear operations for battalion elements in other areas of responsibility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinates subordinate units' responsibilities with the rear operations element responsible for that area. b. Establishes rear operations policies, procedures, and reports for units outside battalion's area of responsibility. <p>8. S4 Section develops ADC plan in coordination with the S2/S3 Section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies all established policies and procedures in higher HQ OPLAN and the battalion TSOP. b. Calculates probable ADC requirements in the battalion's area of responsibility. c. Identifies current ADC assets within the battalion. d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the higher HQ S4 Section. e. Assigns specific functions to all subordinate units IAW battalion TSOP. f. Coordinates ADC plans and procedures with the supporting MP element. g. Coordinates ADC priorities with Support Operations and S2/S3 Sections. h. Identifies alternate operational sites or alert sites in coordination with Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element. i. Establishes warning or alert system, if different from battalion TSOP. j. Develops ADC training and rehearsal plan. <p>9. S2/S3 Section prepares rear operations annex.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidates input into appropriate format IAW FM 101-5 and TSOP. b. Coordinates draft rear operations annex with all other battalion staff sections. c. Forwards draft rear operations annex to S2/S3 for approval or modification. d. Distributes annex to all appropriate battalion staff sections, subordinate units, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	061-283-1002	Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates
	061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	O1-1940.00-1001	Supervise Construction of Obstacles
	S3-9060.00-1000	Conduct Small Unit Combat Operations According to the Law of War

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: S6 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4017)
 (FM 24-18) (FM 3-3) (FM 63-20-1)
 (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ is in the process of trying to establish analog and digital communications with subordinate and supported units in the new area. The TSOPs, OPOrDs, and other required documents are available. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. Battalion communications personnel have accompanied the advance party to establish the battalion communications system. The location for the LOC is identified. The analog and digital communication plan is available. Equipment and personnel are available. Initial communications are established by the advance communications element. Message service is provided on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Wire, radio, local area networks, and generator power are established IAW the communication plan, OPOrD, SOI/SSI, and TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. S6 organizes communications element of the advance/quartering party. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects branch personnel to perform all communication setup tasks at new location. b. Selects required vehicles and equipment to establish communications at the new site IAW movement order or TSOP. c. Coordinates area analog and digital communication system support at the new location with supporting signal element. d. Inspects personnel, vehicles, and equipment prior to departure for compliance with TSOP and commander's guidance. e. Dispatches communications element to assembly area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Ensures radio communications exist during a move between the start point and release point.</p> <p>2. S6 Section provides assistance for area communications system hookup.</p> <p>a. Identifies location of the battalion switchboard in coordination with headquarters advance element leader.</p> <p>b. Identifies all other elements that require area communication system hookup.</p> <p>3. S6 Section installs local and area networks.</p> <p>a. Determines communications service requirements.</p> <p>b. Ensures communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units.</p> <p>c. Plans backup means of communications.</p> <p>d. Implements backup means of communications.</p> <p>4. S6 performs system/software security manager functions.</p> <p>a. Issues passwords.</p> <p>b. Installs antivirus software.</p> <p>c. Performs CSSCS network management functions in support of Support Operations Section.</p> <p>d. Coordinates with the CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS.</p> <p>e. Advises the commander, staff and subordinate units on communications matters.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with Support Operations Section to ensure COOP is included in communications estimate/plan.</p> <p>5. S6 Section establishes wire communications.</p> <p>a. Identifies locations of all subordinate units' CPs.</p> <p>b. Plans wire and telephone installation.</p> <p>c. Prepares a telephone traffic diagram.</p> <p>d. Installs telephone switchboard.</p> <p>e. Installs telephones.</p> <p>f. Lays wire for communications between switchboard and other subordinate units.</p> <p>g. Establishes wire communications between LOC and switchboard.</p> <p>h. Establishes other wire communications between switchboard and other subordinate units when area signal support personnel arrive.</p> <p>i. Tests each telephone circuit to ensure there are no breaks in the wire system.</p> <p>j. Operates the battalion switchboard.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 6. S6 selects radio communications site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects best location for primary common site based on tactical and technical requirements in coordination with the advance/quartering party leader. b. Identifies support requirements for common site, such as fuel, water, maintenance, and rations. c. Selects alternate site(s). d. Selects locations away from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference. e. Establishes physical security control of COMSEC material and documents containing EEFI. f. Incorporates signal site defense plan with overall defense plan. <p>7. S6 Section establishes generator power.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selects sites. b. Establishes fire and fuel storage points. c. Levels generator sets. d. Conducts preoperational PMCS. e. Grounds generator sets. f. Connects DC power cable. g. Performs starting procedures. h. Accomplishes transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications. i. Constructs sound barriers and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signal. j. Operates generator sets IAW appropriate TM. <p>8. S6 Section establishes a message center.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establishes primary and alternate messenger routes and schedules. b. Coordinates pickup and delivery times with users. c. Identifies type of messengers to be used. d. Establishes message control and accountability procedures. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Develops two-shift schedules that maintain 24-hour operations.</p> <p>d. Conducts detailed shift change briefings.</p> <p>e. Coordinates support policies and mission changes among subordinate units with higher HQ and supported units.</p> <p>f. Monitors subordinate units' operational stockage levels by reviewing CSSCS reports to ensure assets do not exceed requirements.</p> <p>g. Directs redistribution of support workloads as driven by changing requirements and priorities in support of operations.</p> <p>h. Directs revision of customer lists as driven by changing requirements, workloads, and priorities.</p> <p>i. Supervises coordination of weapons systems replacement as directed by higher HQ.</p> <p>j. Monitors transportation movement system to ensure efficient response to higher HQ directions.</p> <p>k. Supervises maintenance of the support situation map(s).</p> <p>l. Supervises preparation and submission of subordinate unit terrain requirement data to supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>m. Supervises operations of Support Operations Section to ensure compliance with Service Support Annex and commander's guidance.</p> <p>n. Supervises support contingency planning.</p> <p>o. Assigns liaison personnel to supported units, as required.</p> <p>p. Provides operational briefings to the commander that provides actual status of support to the supported units, as required.</p> <p>q. Monitors cargo transfer/ operations in subordinate direct support units.</p> <p>r. Maintains visibility of flatracks in subordinate direct support units.</p> <p>s. Supervises all critical items identified on the Commander's Tracked Items List.</p> <p>t. Ensures empty flatracks are expeditiously returned to the distribution system.</p> <p>2. Support Operations Section coordinates support operations within area of responsibility. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-329-1019)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>b. Maintains current analog/digital support situation map posted with all subordinate and supported unit locations.</p> <p>NOTE: Manual postings should be within 50 meters of actual location.</p> <p>c. Maintains current customer list that reflects changing requirements, workloads, and priorities of tactical operations.</p> <p>d. Maintains current analog/digital support overlay that shows locations of support facilities and their hours of operations.</p> <p>e. Monitors LOGSTAT reports from subordinate units to determine if requirements exceed capabilities.</p> <p>f. Coordinates redistribution of stock and/or assets to accommodate changing requirements and priorities.</p> <p>g. Coordinates stock status projections with supporting material management element's commodity managers.</p> <p>h. support mission changes to subordinate units by the most secure means using.</p> <p>i. Maintains a current mission essential item chart which reflects short supply items, command controlled items, and current equipment combat losses.</p> <p>j. Coordinates reorganization requirements with higher HQ staff element and supported units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>3. Support Operations Section supervises weapon systems replacement missions assigned by higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Coordinates weapon systems replacement link up at the designated subordinate unit(s) using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>b. Coordinates crew replacement with the replacement regulating element based on replacement requirements identified in SIDPERS reports using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>4. Support Operations Section prepares FRAGO to service support annex.</p> <p>a. Prepares the operational changes as specified by Support Operations Officer based on supplemental information.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Completes the message form format IAW TSOP within the time specified by commander's or Support Operations Officer's guidance. c. Forwards draft FRAGO to Support Operations Officer for review and approval. d. Forwards approval FRAGO to S2/S3 Section for publication. e. Disseminates FRAGO to all affected elements using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>5. Support Operations Section maintains section workbook.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annotates information from incoming messages and reports under appropriate heading and cross-reference. b. Annotates in "Remarks" informal evaluation of the information, as required. c. Deletes all obsolete information from workbook. d. Formats workbook IAW TSOP. <p>6. Support Operations Sections maintains daily staff journal and journal files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Posts all entries as prescribed by FM 101-5 and TSOP. b. Posts data immediately upon receipt or dispatch or occurrence of events. c. Describes accurately and concisely information or event(s) that have occurred. d. Specifies actions taken upon receipt or dispatch of information. e. Maintains current file that contains material necessary to support entries in the daily staff journal. <p>7. Support Operations Section coordinates internal requirements with battalion S1 and S4.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains current status of subordinate units' personnel strengths that directly effect the support mission. b. Maintains current status of subordinate units' supplies and equipment OR that directly affects the support mission. <p>8. Support Operations Sections coordinates tactical situation with the S2/S3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors tactical situations for indications that have or may affect support mission accomplishment. b. Coordinates repositioning of base locations based on tactical situation with S2/S3 Section. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Adjusts current operations in coordination with the S2/S3 Section based on NBC implications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay
STP 21-II-MQS	01-9001.19-0002	Take Charge of a Company, Staff Section, or Equivalent Sized Organization
	03-5104.00-0007	Supervise Graves Registration Support
	03-5104.00-0026	Plan Graves Registration Support
	03-9001.12-0003	Communicate Effectively as a Commander or Staff Officer

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. Provides briefing on current tactical situation to the commander and/or XO. f. Coordinates with higher, adjacent and lower HQ using radio, wire, MTS or appropriate BFACS. g. Disseminate information to higher, adjacent and lower HQ using radio, wire, MTS or appropriate BFACS. <p>2. S6 Section maintains analog and digital communications systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitors all radio/digital networks in order of priority as specified in the OPORD and/or TSOP. b. Operates battalion NCS IAW TSOP, OPORD, and SOI/SSI. c. Develops alternate communications plan for implementation when established methods are disrupted or fail. d. Issues passwords. e. Installs antivirus. <p>3. S2/S3 Section disseminates intelligence and weather information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspects intelligence summaries and reports for pertinency to battalion operations and security. b. Inspects weather reports for data that could have significant effects on the battalion's security. c. Forwards pertinent intelligence and weather information to all subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. <p>4. S2/S3 Section supervises battalion's participation in the higher HQ OPSEC plan. (STP 21-II-MQS: O3-3711.12-0001, O3-3711.12-0002)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminates higher HQ countermeasure requirements to all subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. b. Supervises implementation of countermeasures that overcome threat capabilities in SIGINT, HUMINT, and imagery collection. c. Inspects subordinate units' positions for OPSEC compliance and effectiveness. d. Provides feedback reports to higher HQ on activities that affect OPSEC measures using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. S2/S3 Section coordinates NBC defense activities. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 031-503-3008, STP 21-II-MQS: 04-5030.00-2007, 04-5030.00-2008)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Disseminates higher HQ NBC data that pertains to battalion operations to all subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. b. Supervises NBC defense preparations as directed by the higher HQ staff element and/or the commander. <p>6. S2/S3 Section performs tactical support area duties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using FBCB2 or appropriate BFACS. b. Maintains current staff journal(s) entries IAW current command policy and TSOP. c. Maintains current analog/digital operational maps and overlays depicting all friendly and enemy locations within 50 meters of actual location that affect the battalion's operations. <p>NOTE: All manual entries are posted within 50 meters of actual location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Maintains section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references. e. Maintains current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily staff journal entries. f. Maintains current NBC analog/digital situation maps and overlays. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

** Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	O1-1940.00-1001	Supervise Construction of Obstacles
	O3-3711.12-0001	Implement Operations Security
	O3-3711.12-0002	Protect Classified Information and Material
	O4-5030.00-2007	Supervise Unit Response to Nuclear Attack or Radiological Hazard
	O4-5030.00-2008	Prepare and Submit Nuclear, Biological, or Chemical 1 Report

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENT: STAFF SECTIONS

TASK: MAINTAIN COMMUNICATIONS (DIGITIZED) (63-1-4041)
 (FM 63-20-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-20)
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-64) (FM 3-4)
 (FM 63-21-1) (FM 63-2-2) (FM 63-23-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion HQ has analog and digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support operations have commenced. Coordination of support operations is conducted by digital means, radio, wire, and messenger. The threat is capable of locating, identifying, and rapidly exploiting all types of communications. This task is performed under all environmental conditions, both day and night. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Uninterrupted 24-hour analog and digital communications is provided to battalion HQ and all subordinate units through one or more external means. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to maintain the communications system.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. S6 Section performs functions related to information technology operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Exercises staff supervision over communications services. b. Determines requirements for communications services. c. Issues passwords. d. Installs software. e. Performs CSSCS network management functions. f. Coordinates with CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS. g. Ensures communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units. 2. S6 Section performs network management functions for all tactical automation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair. b. Monitors contractor repair performance. c. Collects status from organic elements for BFACS and the CSSAMO for CSS STAMIS. <p>3. S6 Section performs functions in support of local area networks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Installs local area networks. b. Operates local area networks. c. Operates the battalion switchboard. d. Serves as net control station. e. Performs unit level maintenance on all communications electronic equipment in the unit. <p>4. S6 Section operates NCS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Opens net IAW current SOI/SSI. b. Challenges all stations in net as required in the SOI/SSI. c. Controls entry and departure of all stations. d. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures. e. Enforces station and net restrictions. f. Observes radio and listening silence periods as prescribed by Division OPORD or the commander's directives. g. Completes transition to extended range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required. h. Remote radio station(s) at least one kilometer, if required. <p>5. S6 Section manages message traffic. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 113-573-8006)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processes messages by precedence, date, and time group IAW the TSOP. b. Processes incoming messages without errors. c. Forwards incoming messages to appropriate element or section. d. Checks outgoing messages for completeness and readability. e. Employs approved radiotelephone procedures. f. Transmits messages IAW precedence, correct format, and prescribed text. g. Employs approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Decrypts all incoming messages. i. Encrypts all outgoing messages. j. Transmits messages for no longer than 20 seconds. k. Employs lowest operational power setting consistent with operational requirements. l. Ensures radio communications exist during unit moves between the start point and the release point. <p>6. S6 Section employs SIGSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Employs COMSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to deny friendly telecommunications information to the enemy. b. Employs ELSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communications devices, from threat detection. c. Evaluates TEMPEST controls to identify emanation vulnerabilities and countermeasures. d. Processes initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports from assigned and attached elements. e. Forwards MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports to Division HQ and supporting signal element IAW TSOP and SOI/SSI. <p>7. S6 Section maintains landline communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains wire communications between the battalion CP and all assigned and attached elements. b. Maintains a hot loop between the CP and all assigned and attached elements, if switchboard is not available. c. Establishes messenger runner when land communications is inoperative. <p>8. Radio operators implement remedial ECCM.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna. b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming. c. Switch to high power on receiver-transmitters. d. Recommend distant stations switch to high power. e. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming. f. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming. g. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to supporting Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications such as, relay (through another station) or wire.</p> <p>i. Request (using alternate means) that the net change to a backup frequency.</p> <p>9. Radio operators implement AM remedial ECCM.</p> <p>a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna.</p> <p>b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.</p> <p>c. Check for intentional or unintentional interference.</p> <p>d. Check equipment grounding.</p> <p>e. Use radio frequency gain/frequency vernier in an attempt to work through the jamming.</p> <p>f. Relocate the radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce effects of jamming.</p> <p>g. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.</p> <p>h. Submit MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to the Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>i. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications such as, relay (through another radio station), FM, or wire.</p> <p>j. Request (using alternate means) that the net change to alternate frequency.</p> <p>10. S6 Section maintains generator power.</p> <p>a. Operates generators IAW appropriate TM.</p> <p>b. Constructs sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and minimize heat signature.</p> <p>c. Constructs fuel storage and fire control point for all generators as prescribed by the TSOP and commander's guidance.</p> <p>11. S6 Section provides unit level maintenance support.</p> <p>a. Responds to calls for assistance within 30 minutes.</p> <p>b. Makes organizational level repairs on communications equipment.</p> <p>c. Evacuates equipment to DS maintenance unit.</p> <p>d. Maintains authorized PLL levels.</p> <p>e. Picks up repaired equipment from DS maintenance unit.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Formulates staff operating policies. c. Supervises maintenance of master policy files. d. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. e. Coordinates assigned mission with subordinate units' commanders using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. f. Supervises the operations of the LOC. <p>3. Command Section exchanges information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Transforms pertinent information into usable data for decision making. b. Coordinates information exchange within, and with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units using appropriate BFACS. c. Conducts operational briefings as necessary. <p>4. Command Section provides staff liaison.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides planning assistance to any supported units, if requested. b. Provides assistance in planning contingency operations, when required. <p>5. Command Section maintains policy files.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintains current policy files by tabbing and indexing. b. Maintains current staff journals. c. Maintains current section's workbook files. d. Maintains current section situation maps and overlays using appropriate BFACS. <p>6. Command Section reacts to loss of key personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Realigns staff based on line of succession or commander's guidance. b. Maintains continuity of operations. c. Forwards casualty reports to higher HQ S1 Section using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	03-9001.10-0004	Apply the Ethical Decision-Making Process as a Commander or Staff Officer
	03-9001.13-0001	Solve Problems Using the Military Problem Solving Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Establishes digital communications with higher and lower HQ.</p> <p>e. Develops alternate communications plan that is implemented when established methods are disrupted or fail.</p> <p>2. S2/S3 Section coordinates base cluster defensive activities.</p> <p>a. Consolidates base defense plans into the overall battalion defensive plan.</p> <p>b. Consolidates base ADC plans into the overall battalion ADC plan.</p> <p>c. Prepares priority listing that identifies the support facilities that have the greatest impact on the current operation.</p> <p>d. Conducts base assessment of each base and its defense measures to ensure compliance with the rear operation plan.</p> <p>e. Forwards battalion sector's tactical situation and status to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>f. Corrects all identified base defense weaknesses in coordination with base commanders.</p> <p>g. Maintains current IPB as products are disseminated by higher HQ and supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>h. Designates internal response force based on number of personnel, type weapons, and current mission of each base in the battalion area.</p> <p>i. Establishes coordination with MP units and other available response forces to plan response to Level II or III threat using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>j. Coordinates NBC defense operations with higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>k. Provides input to the commander and XO on positioning newly arriving units in the battalion area.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section coordinates preengagement preparation measures.</p> <p>a. Plots location(s) of threat force on the analog/digital situation map(s) as SPOTREPs are received.</p> <p>b. Disseminates current threat size and location to all subordinate units using appropriate BFACS.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Forwards all SPOTREPs to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. d. Implements defense condition level consistent with threat size and equipment. e. Directs redeployment of all isolated support teams and supply points to closest BDOC in coordination with the supporting rear operations element. f. Directs preliminary loading of all nonessential equipment and supplies, and positioning of vehicles for immediate exit by all subordinate units. g. Briefs commander and XO on current tactical situation to include redeployment recommendations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Maintains analog/digital map surveillance of enemy force as information is received in subordinate unit's SPOTREP.</p> <p>c. Forwards SPOTREP to higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>d. Disseminates current threat information to all subordinate units using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>3. BCOOC coordinates base cluster response. (STP 21-II-MQS: O1-0401.20-0001, O1-3301.02-0011, O4-5030.00-2006, O4-5030.00-2007)</p> <p>a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>b. Maintains digital communications with all elements using appropriate BFACS.</p> <p>c. Establishes security level consistent with threat size and equipment.</p> <p>d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element as situation changes.</p> <p>e. Reports current situation to subordinate units as soon as situation changes.</p> <p>f. Recalls isolated support elements to predetermined defensive positions within the base cluster.</p> <p>g. Assembles internal response forces at predesignated rally points as prescribed by defense plan.</p> <p>h. Coordinates internal response force commitment with the higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>i. Directs internal response force maneuvers to delay and deny the enemy penetration into established lines.</p> <p>j. Coordinates MP, CAS, and preplanned indirect fire support with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate.</p> <p>k. Identifies projected degradation levels within the battalion in coordination with the higher HQ staff element and all major customer units.</p> <p>l. Forwards identified degradation levels to higher HQ staff element.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>m. Maintains current analog/digital situation maps showing current locations of all friendly and enemy forces.</p> <p>n. Coordinates additional security requirements for movement of support through affected areas with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>o. Coordinates threat NBC activities with higher HQ staff element Section and/or supporting rear operations element.</p> <p>p. Makes recommendations to commander on partial or total suspension of all support functions until threat is driven from the AO or the MPs or TCF relieves the units.</p> <p>q. Directs repositioning of units in base cluster(s) for better defensive position that is consistent with the tactical situation.</p> <p>r. Downgrades security level as the threat is driven from area or defeated.</p> <p>4. BCOB supervises reorganization of base cluster defense.</p> <p>a. Performs damage assessment of area of responsibility by reviewing SITREPs from cluster subelements.</p> <p>b. Directs cluster defense plan adjustments, as required.</p> <p>c. Coordinates base cluster resupply plan with the S4 Section, higher HQ S4 Section, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate radio, wire, or BFACS.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-II-MQS	O1-0401.20-0001	Direct Unit Air Defense
	O1-3301.02-0011	Defend a Company Position
	O4-5030.00-2006	Supervise Unit Response to a Chemical or Biological Attack
	O4-5030.00-2007	Supervise Unit Response to Nuclear Attack or Radiological Hazard
	S3-8987.01-0001	Describe the Categories of Threat

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. Establish ADC communications to transmit all required communications. d. Coordinate ADC operations with higher HQ S2/S3 Section and supporting rear operations element. e. Maintain ADC situation maps. f. Establish control of affected subordinate units. g. Calculate damage control effectiveness of subordinate units. h. Release operational subordinate units to commanders for continuance of support mission. i. Forward unit effectiveness reports to higher HQ S2/S3 Section and supporting rear operations element. j. Provide ADC operational update to commander. <p>3. BCOG and S4 Section direct recovery activities. (STP 21-24-SMCT: 031-503-3004, STP 21-II-MQS: O4-5030.00-2020)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Establish priorities for affected facilities. b. Task subordinate elements for rescue and decontamination teams, as required. c. Provide locations of decontamination sites to subordinate units. d. Identify locations of emergency food, clothing, water, and shelter. e. Coordinate emergency treatment and evacuation with the supporting medical element using appropriate BFACS. <p>4. BCOG and S4 Section coordinate additional support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinate engineer support with supporting rear operations element. b. Coordinate MP support with supporting rear operations element. c. Coordinate EOD support with supporting rear operations element. d. Coordinate labor support with supporting rear operations element. e. Coordinate additional ADC requirements with higher HQ S2/S3 Section using radio, wire, or appropriate BFACS. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area
STP 21-II-MQS	O4-5030.00-2020	Supervise Nuclear, Biological, or Chemical Decontamination

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
 S1 SECTION
 S2/S3 SECTION
 S4 SECTION

TASK: PLAN BATTALION DEPLOYMENT UPON RECEIPT OF A WARNING ORDER (63-1-8073)
 (FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher HQ is at a normal state of deployment readiness and receives a WARNO to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The SDO or 1SG has notified the commander. This task occurs concurrently with directing deployment alert activities. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. Higher HQ's subordinate units are deploying as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means, and courier. Deployment planning activities are performed day or night under all environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plans are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

NOTE: MOBPLANs are required only for RC units. RC-specific tasks steps and performance measures are annotated "(RC)".

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit commander directs deployment planning IAW higher HQ guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing the WARNO and appropriate CONPLAN. b. Briefs staff on deployment mission. c. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. d. Directs S2/S3 to verify details of mission. e. Directs S2/S3 to update the OPLANs. f. Directs mobilization officer to review MOBPLAN (RC). g. Directs S2/S3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Directs security officer to initiate security plan. i. Directs XO to prepare commander's briefing. j. Conducts commander's briefing. k. Verifies readiness status.</p> <p>* 2. XO coordinates staff planning. a. Implements commander's directives in staff planing and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for preparing movement/deployment plans. c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing. f. Prepares commander's briefing. g. Identifies redeployment criteria.</p> <p>3. S2/S3 Section analyzes mission. a. Identifies all specified and implied tasks in the WARNO. b. Identifies all documented policies and procedures. c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ. d. Coordinates with S1 section for personnel analysis of mission. e. Coordinates with S4 section for logistics and movement analysis of mission. f. Verifies maps and overlays for current mission. g. Coordinates with security officer to incorporate risk management procedures into the OPLANs. h. Incorporates force protection measures into OPLANs. i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.</p> <p>4. Staff conducts readiness review of subordinate units. a. Provides personnel readiness review. b. Performs logistics readiness review. c. Performs OPSEC readiness review. d. Identifies readiness issues. e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness. f. Coordinates with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC).</p> <p>5. S2/S3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updates MPBPLAN with current mission information. b. Confirms annex information is correct. c. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan. <p>6. S4 Section validates movement plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Validates movement plans for all modes of transportation indicated in the WARNO. b. Validates equipment status against MCSR. c. Validates AUDEL of subordinate units against unit property books. d. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate unit and higher HQ movement plans. e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC). <p>* 7. Staff officers supervise staff actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANS and commander's guidance. b. Exchange pertinent information relevant to the deployment with the other staff sections. c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/S3 section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's briefing, as required. d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENTS: COMMAND SECTION
STAFF SECTIONS**

TASK: PLAN BATTALION REDEPLOYMENT (63-1-8074)
(FM 100-17)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a WARNO to deploy to home station. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate higher HQ and subordinate units by radio, telephone, electronic means and courier. The readiness RSOP and deployment WARNO are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Redeployment Movement Plan is completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Commander directs redeployment planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units. b. Directs S2/S3 to prepare OPORD c. Directs S2/S3 to validate subordinate units' Movement Plans. d. Directs Security Officer to update Security Plan. e. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities. <p>* 2. Staff officers analyze mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identify tasks in the WARNO. b. Identify documented policies and procedures. c. Coordinate mission parameters and details with higher HQ. d. Coordinate with the S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission. e. Coordinate with the S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of mission. f. Prepare battalion OPORD. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Verify redeployment maps and overlays. h. Brief commander on redeployment mission.</p> <p>* 3. XO coordinates staff planning.</p> <p>a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making. b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating redeployment plans. c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance. d. Coordinates redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders. e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.</p> <p>4. Staff sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units.</p> <p>a. Provide personnel readiness review. b. Perform logistics readiness review. c. Perform OPSEC readiness review. d. Identify readiness issues. e. Make recommendations to bring unit to designated readiness level.</p> <p>5. S4 Section validates deployment plans.</p> <p>a. Validates equipment status. b. Validates AUDEL for subordinate units. c. Coordinates for S2/S3 review of subordinate units and battalion redeployment movement plans.</p> <p>* 6. Staff officers supervise staff sections.</p> <p>a. Direct preparation of redeployment plans and orders. b. Direct preparation of draft input for commander's brief.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" Indicates a leader task step.

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

Chapter 6

External Evaluations

6-1. INTRODUCTION. An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. The unit may modify the evaluation, based on METT-TC and other considerations, as deemed appropriate by the commander. The unit will be evaluated using the standards from selected T&EOs found in Chapter 5 of this MTP. This evaluation will encompass the whole unit and should employ a realistic OPFOR and the use of MILES. At the completion of the evaluation, the unit commander should be able to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the unit. These strengths and weaknesses will form the basis for future training and resource allocation.

6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit's capabilities.

a. Prepare the evaluation by developing a scenario containing the major missions and appropriate tasks. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in process AARs. The sample evaluation scenario in Table 6-1 contains missions as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Selective tailoring is required, because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Figure 6-1 illustrates the general scenario of tasks performed in this exercise. The following procedures are suggested for developing the evaluation.

Table 6-1. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion Evaluation Scenario				
EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	TIME FRAME	
1	Admin Preparation	As required	Prior to start	
2	Deployment Alert Notification	10 min	Day 1	0500
3	Initiate Recall Plan	30 min	0530	
4	Establish the Emergency Operations Center	2 hrs	0730	
5*	Operate the Emergency Operations Center	10 hrs		
6*	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	3 hrs		

Table 6-1. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion evaluation scenario (continued)			
EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	TIME FRAME
7	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Support	3 hrs	1010
8	Provide Deployment Personnel and Administrative Support	4 hrs	1410
9	Coordinate Family Assistance Plan	2 hrs	1610
10	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	2 hrs	1810
11	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	2 hrs	2010
12*	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	8 hrs	
13	Update Movement Plan/Order	50 min	2100
14	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hrs	2300
15*	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs	
16	AAR	1 hr	2400
17	Coordinate Relocation of Subordinate Elements	3 hrs	DAY 2 0600
18	Supervise Relocation of Subordinate Elements and Sustainment Resources	4 hrs	1000
19	AAR	1 hr	1100
20	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	4 hrs	1500
21	Establish Battalion Command Post (Forward)	2 hrs	1700
22	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr	1800
23	Supervised Road March	1 hr	1900
24	Threat Interdictions	40 min	1940
25	Cross Release Points	10 min	1950
26	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Facilities	3 hrs	2250
27	AAR	1 hr	2350
28	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr	DAY 3 0500
29	Develop Staff Estimates	1 hr	0600
30	Prepare Operations Order/Plan and Annexes	2 hrs	0800
31	AAR	1 hrs	0900

**Table 6-1. Headquarters, Aviation Support Battalion
evaluation scenario (continued)**

EVENT	ACTION	ESTIMATED TIME	TIME FRAME
32*	Provide Direct Logistics Support to Aviation Brigade, Cavalry Squadron and Area Logistics Support to Attached Elements	10 hrs	
33	Threat Interdictions	40 min	0940
34	AAR	1 hr	1040
35	Level II/III Attacks	30 min	1110
36	Defense Responses	30 min	1140
37	Damage Assessment	2 hrs	1340
38	Restoration of Support	2 hrs	1540
39	AAR	1 hr	1640
40	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	10 min	DAY 4 0400
41	Coordinate Reconstitution for Deployment	2 hrs	0600
42	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr	0700
43	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	2 hrs	0900
44	Provide Redeployment Support	2 hrs	1100
45	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	2 hrs	1300
46	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	2 hrs	1500
47	Coordinate Home Station Activities	2 hrs	1700
48	AAR-Final	2 hrs	1900
Total Time: 96 hrs			

* Events occur simultaneously.

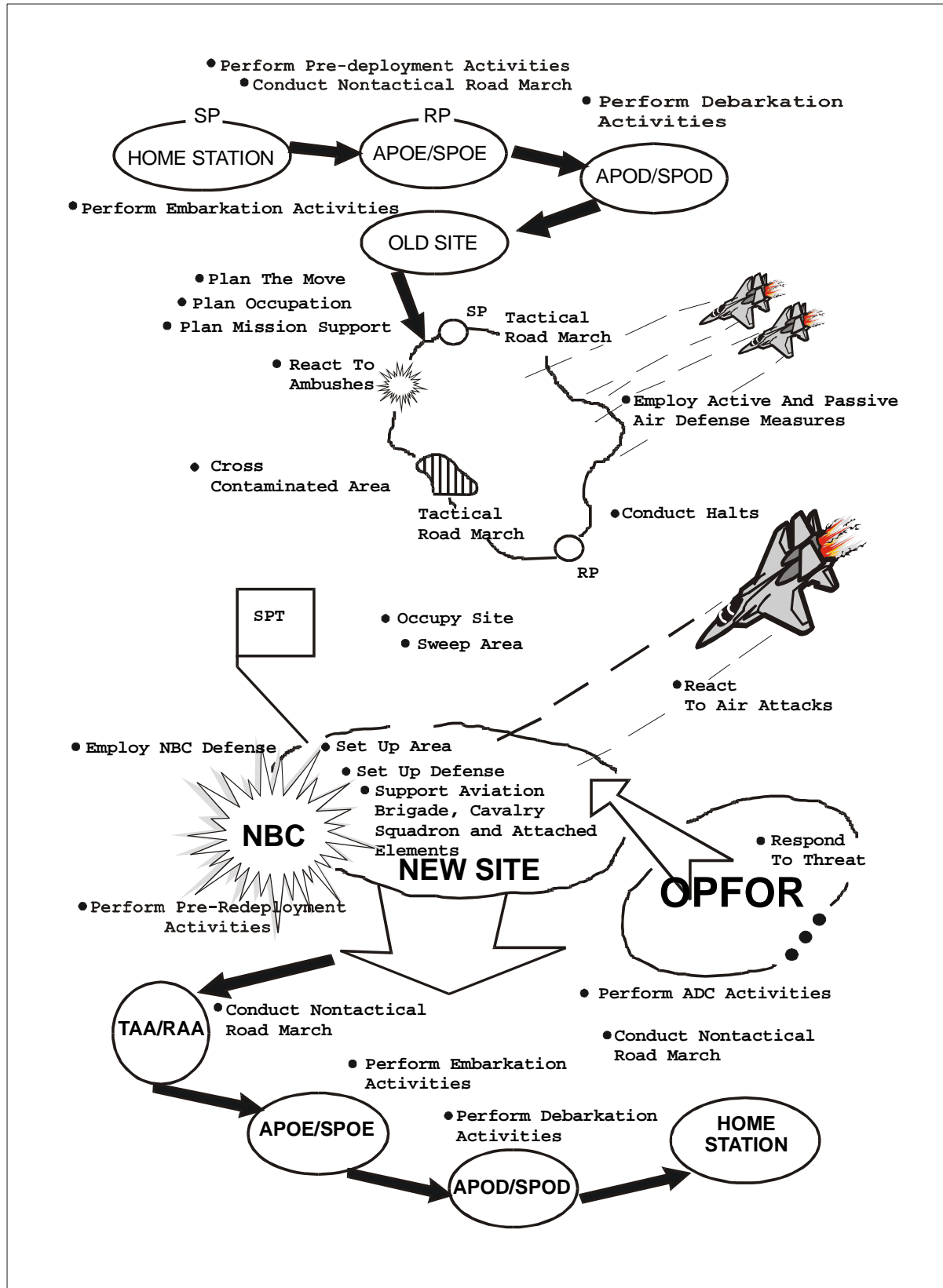


Figure 6-1. Example Graphic Evaluation Scenario

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element, using Table 2-1. Record the selected missions in the Unit Proficiency Worksheet (UPW), Figure 6-2.

Unit _____		Date _____				
No.	Unit Mission /Task	Section /Squad	Section /Squad	Section /Squad	Section /Squad	Unit Overall and Remarks
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
		GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	GO NO GO	
* If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form						

Figure 6-2. Example Unit Proficiency Worksheet

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations, Table 6-1, sample evaluation scenario. Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in process AARs.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Support requirements must be coordinated consistent with the level of evaluation (section, staff element, etc.) being conducted. OPFOR players and controllers must also be identified early to support free play if required. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experiences with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating headquarters will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Consolidated support requirements

Battalion support requirements can be calculated by adding the sum of the requirements for each subordinate STX, and the requirements for the headquarters and headquarters company when these elements participate.

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.

c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. For this evaluation, an area of ___ meters X ___ meters is required. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters that will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. SELECTING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS.

a. OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. They should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are minimum rank and experience requirements for the evaluators:

(1) Battalion OC will be an officer with battalion command experience.

(2) Company OC will be an officer with company command experience.

(3) Platoon or section OCs will be a lieutenant or NCO with platoon or section experience.

(4) Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

6-4. TRAINING THE OBSERVER CONTROLLERS. OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas:

a. Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. OCs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

b. MILES. Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

- (1) Rules of engagement.
- (2) OC duties and responsibilities.
- (3) Communication system.
- (4) Evaluation data collection plan.

d. Safety. During any training event, all soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators must ensure that all events are conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to the beginning of each event, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures that are to be taken during execution.

6-5. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. Selection. Any qualified Skill Level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

- (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
- (2) Rules of engagement.
- (3) Threat small unit tactics.
- (4) Training scenarios.
- (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Safety.

c. OPFOR Strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three-to-one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not effectively challenge the unit when defending. The OPFOR should have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-6. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION. Evaluations are divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a. Pre-evaluation.

(1) The senior OC and all other OCs must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's AO.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STXs and FTXs in Chapter 4.

(3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions as required.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) The OCs should make an equipment function check after each time the unit moves and unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b. Evaluation. The senior evaluator controls the exercise and oversees the recording of mission performance. Evaluators resolve all conflicts and record all

staff limitations as they arise. A debriefing should take place between modules to clear up any questions. Evaluators must remain neutral throughout the evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in Paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD and FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior OC for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense; instead the team accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. Other OCs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior OC issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior OC terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the OC's Task Summary Sheets and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. At this time, OCs must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior OC directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) The OCs should follow these guidelines:

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. OCs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit's location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR actions to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission.

c. Post Evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following functions:

(1) The unit OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The unit OC must complete the task summary sheets.

(3) The unit must turn in all completed OC packets (with the OC scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The unit OC must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5) Each element OC should conduct an AAR of his element's performance.

6-7. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION.

a. The evaluating headquarters develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet, Figure 6-4, documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet, Figure 6-5, documents weather information in order to compare missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report, Figure 6-6, documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior OC has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his own findings and his subordinate OCs' input. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets, Figure 6-3) to determine overall

proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as proscribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the unit OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the UPW.

(1) Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-4). This report records personnel and equipment status information.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION: _____ DATE: _____						
2. UNIT LEADERS (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
CDR	LTC/MAJ	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
XO	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SPT OPN OFF	MAJ/CPT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
S1	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
S2/S3	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
S4	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
S6	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
ACFT MAINT OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SPT OPN OFF	CPT/LT	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
AVN MAT OFF	CWO/WO1	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
PETRL SUPPLY SGT	E7/E6	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
MAT CONTROL SUPV	E7/E6	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
SR LAN MGR	E5/E4	1 - 3	4 - 6	7 - 12	13 - 18	OVER 19
3. UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding Leaders): _____						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major Items):						

5. COMMENTS:						

EVALUATOR SIGNATURE: _____						

Figure 6-4. Example Unit Data Sheet

(2) Environmental Data Report (Figure 6-5). This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET					
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:					
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:					
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:					
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)					
CLEAR	PARTLY CLOUDY	HAZY	RAINING	SNOWING	FOG
OTHER:					
TEMPERATURE:					
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)					
DRY	WET	ICE	SNOW		
OTHER:					
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)					
DAY	NIGHT				
MOON PHASE:	1/4	1/2	3/4	FULL	
AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO LIGHT:					
4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)					
FLAT	ROLLING	MOUNTAINOUS	JUNGLE	DESERT	URBAN ARCTIC
OTHER:					
TOP SOIL:	SANDY	ROCKY	CLAY	OTHER:	
AVERAGE RANGE OF VISIBILITY DUE TO TERRAIN:					
5. REMARKS:					

Figure 6-5. Example Environmental Data Sheet

6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW.

a. General. AARs should be planned at logical intervals during the exercise. Identifying performance deficiencies while still fresh, getting everyone involved, and preventing the reinforcement of bad habits are critical to improved performance. On-the-spot evaluations and corrections should also be emphasized.

b. Feedback. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "database" for key points. The AAR leader draws information from each member that becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c. Preparing the After Action Review. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OCs should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that they can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. OCs do not need to remain close to the unit leader, since more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, OCs must be present when the commander issues the order. OCs should position themselves where they can best observe anticipated critical events. Examples of critical events include:

- (a) Conducting a road march.
- (b) Crossing a radiologically contaminated area.
- (c) Performing unit supply operations.
- (d) Responding to an NBC attack.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned) or where the terrain can be observed. Usually, the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting AARs.

(4) Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's events in the order in which they occurred.

(5) Review the events. After the senior OC has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events that are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects as many events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. Conducting the After Action Review. Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

(1) Organize the participants. When the senior OC and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's OC is responsible for the element he observed.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and, as the AAR proceeds, have the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. The AAR leader should:

(a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.

(b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.

(c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.

(d) Suggest the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, and how it could be done better.

(e) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.

(f) Relate events to subsequent results.

(g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(h) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.

(i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4) Review the sequence of events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise. Ask the following questions:

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Were there incidents of fratricide or near fratricide, and how can they be avoided in the future?

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader:

(a) Maintains order and discipline.

(b) Reviews the training objectives.

(c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Involves participants in the discussion.

(g) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.

(h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

e. Reference Materials. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, and FM 25-101.

Appendix A

Combined Arms Training Strategy

A-1. PURPOSE. This appendix provides, as part of the CATS, the Combined Arms Command's (CAC) recommended strategy for training a unit. This appendix has three parts. The first part describes CATS and explains how CATS fits into the training planning process as described in FM 25-101. The second part explains how to read the strategies, and the third part explains how to integrate CATS into the long-range and near-term planning process.

Section I. CATS AND THE TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS

A-2. TRAINING PLANNING PROCESS. FM 25-101 describes a three-step process, based on the unit METL and ending in training execution. Figure A-1 is a graphic representation of the process. CATS does not replace this process. It is a training tool that enhances the commander's ability to use the training planning process to manage his training and to optimize the use of scarce training resources. CATS unit strategies describe recommended training events and the event frequency. Your unit may train all or some of these events. Your training frequency may or may not match that in the CATS strategy. Whatever a unit's training requirements, CATS provides a framework for use in making decisions on the training to be conducted. The training strategy outlined in CATS is designed to help commanders at all levels develop and execute a more efficient training program. Any given strategy addresses all units Army-wide of the same TOE. The specific makeup of the unit's training program is dependent upon its METL, guidance from higher headquarters, and the resources available at the installation or training environment. It is descriptive in nature and intended for use as a guide for the commander.

A-3. CATS. CATS is the Army's training strategy that integrates combined arms training for heavy, light, and special operations forces, the active and reserve components, in the unit and institution environments. It provides an azimuth to guide Army training and identifies the resources required to support that training. It enables the Army to identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources. CATS evolved from the need for more efficient training based on expected resource constraints. At US Army level, CATS gives the rationale for acquiring training resources through the development of unit and institutional training strategies. The strategies provide recommended training frequencies and identify the training resources needed to support the strategy.

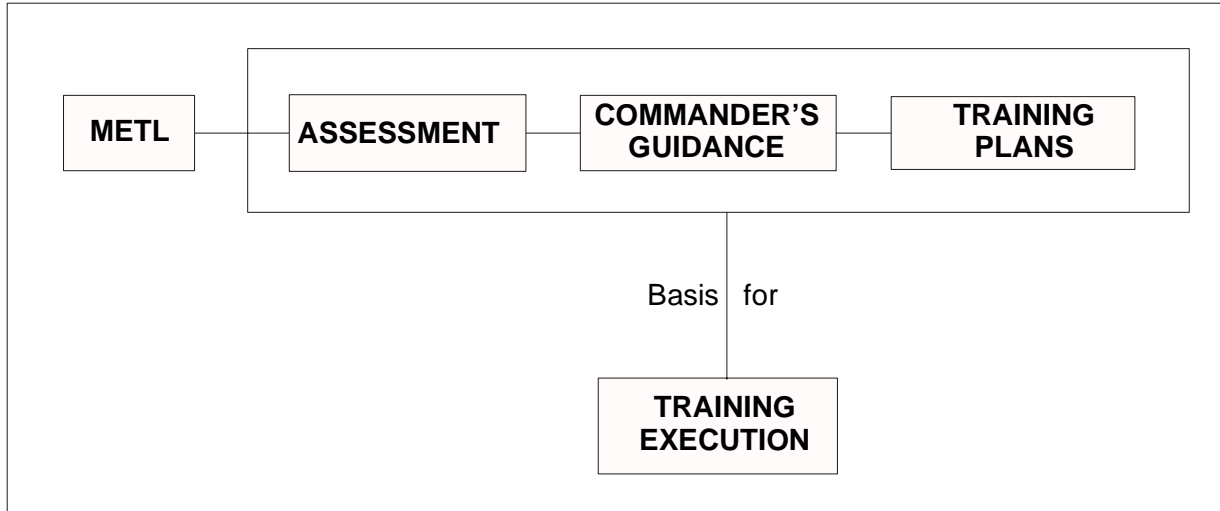


Figure A-1. Training Planning Process

A-4. TERMS. The information in this paragraph explains the terms listed in Figure A-1. For information on the training planning process, see FM 25-101.

a. The METL is an unconstrained, unprioritized statement of the tasks required to complete the war time mission. It is the source of training planning activities.

b. Assessment is the beginning of the training planning process. It is the commander's evaluation of the unit's training level on the METL.

c. Commander's Guidance consists of long-range planning calendars and CTG issued to the battalion from the division. It serves to focus the training efforts of the battalion in accordance with the division commander's priorities. The battalion in turn issues CTG for its subordinate companies.

d. Training Plans are a collection of schedules and other supporting documents that carry out the commander's guidance.

e. Training Execution is the actual performance of the training scheduled in the training plans portion of the training planning process.

A-5. Applying CATS. The information in this paragraph explains how to apply CATS to the training planning process. Figure A-2 is a graphic representation of the process.

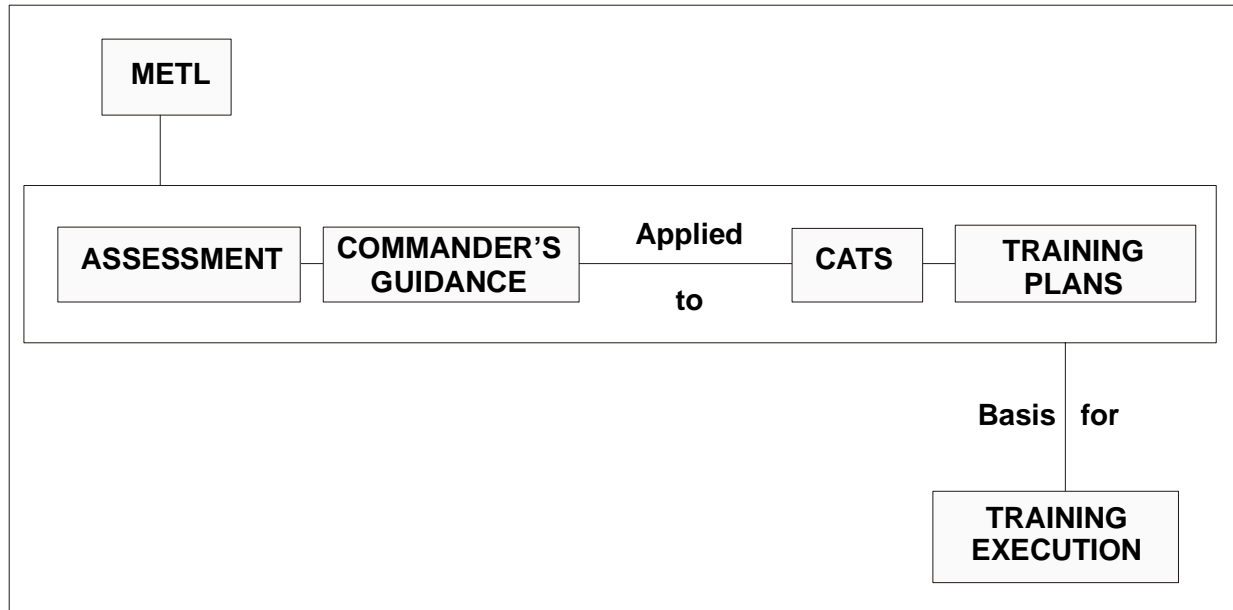


Figure A-2. Training Planning Process

a. The commander determines the exact events and tasks to be trained based on his METL and guidance from higher headquarters.

(1) The unit trains tasks during events established in FM 25-100, FM 25-101, and CATS.

(2) The unit trains its METL by training soldiers, and their appropriate sections, in their wartime tasks. The unit applies CATS to its training plans by applying the training events, frequencies, and critical gates contained in strategies to the CTG in developing its training plans. The commander and training officer/NCO uses the critical gates identified in the strategies to ensure that basic tasks are trained prior to moving on to training more complex or resource intensive tasks. The performance of training gate tasks are always evaluated by the commander and serve as the basis of additional training efforts. For example, a TEWT should be used to train METL tasks prior to conducting a complex and resource intensive event like a CFX.

(3) TADSS based training uses a mix of TADSS and live fire/field training. The strategies show those TADSS within the Army's system or year projected for fielding. The TADSS may not be available at your installation or training environment.

b. The strategies can be viewed as training plans for generic type units. By inserting an extra step into the training process, commanders apply the components of their CATS strategies to their particular training programs and

environments. Commanders evaluate and apply the information contained in the strategies to their training environments. The optimal frequencies identified in the strategies may have to be adjusted based upon a unit's training status or its resourcing.

Section II. STRATEGY ORGANIZATION AND INTERPRETATION

A-6. UNIT TRAINING STRATEGIES. This paragraph explains the strategy organization and explains how to use it. The unit training portion of CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and resources recommended to train to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained at a particular unit will be based on the unit's METL. The unit strategy in this appendix covers all CSS units. The unit training strategies have three major components -- Maneuver, Gunnery, and Soldier.

a. The Maneuver strategy is descriptive. It provides recommended training frequencies for collective training events in a unit. The events come from FM 25-100, 25-101, or the glossary of this MTP. It helps a unit maintain MTP standards and depicts the resources required to support training events.

b. The Gunnery Component has Individual/crew served weapons strategies that the Infantry school developed. These strategies can also be found in DA Pam 350-38 and DA Pam 350-39 or appropriate weapons FMs.

c. The Soldier Component is a descriptive strategy for training individual soldier skills. It lists the resources required to support soldier training and links with and supports a collective training strategy.

A-7. ELEMENTS OF THE UNIT STRATEGIES. The unit training strategies are in matrix formats. The matrix lists the unit size levels, training events or training exercises, training event frequencies for both active and reserve components, critical gates, and training resources.

a. Training levels are units, training elements or echelons (such as individual through corps) that execute specific training events.

b. Training events are types of collective training exercise identified in FM 25-101 or the glossary of this MTP. Training events identify the recommended exercises that units should conduct to train to MTP standard. Units normally conduct events in a progressive and sequential manner. For example, TEWT

should be conducted before conducting a CFX. A CPX should be conducted before conducting a FTX.

c. Training event frequencies are the suggested number of times that an event should be trained during a training cycle to attain or maintain MTP standards. AC units use an annual cycle and RC unit's conduct training on a 4-year cycle.

d. A critical gate is a training event that must be done and evaluated before moving onto a more complex, resource intensive or hazardous event. MACOM or field commanders may direct performance of critical gate training tasks to an established standard prior to performing more complex or resource intensive tasks.

e. The unit training strategies identify the resources that will be used to support each training event. These resources are:

- OPTEMPO
- Ammunition
- TADSS
- Training Land
- Training Ranges

The resources listed in the strategies represent those that are available now.

(1) OPTEMPO figures reflect the annual operating miles/hours for the base vehicle for a particular unit, per event. The OPTEMPO figures come from the BLTM. When no BLTM was available, the proponents developed an estimated OPTEMPO required to support all the annual iterations of that training event.

(2) Ammunition figures reflect the ammunition required to support training events and come from DA Pam 350-38, *Standards in Weapons Training*. The maneuver/collective strategies reflect blank ammunition requirements. Live ammunition appears on the Gunnery strategies. Pyrotechnics appear on the maneuver/collective component.

(3) TADSS are training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations that support specific training events. TADSS listed are those in the system and non-system TADSS that are fielded. For example, Battalion and BBS is identified

as a primary TADSS to support battalion staff and headquarters company/detachment's CPX training.

(4) Training Land is a resource category that will list the recommended training land in kilometers by event to conduct maneuver training. The reference is TC 25-1. A particular unit needed will determine the actual amount of training land by METT-TC and the characteristics or condition of the training land available to the unit.

(5) Training Range is a resource requirement that supports weapons training events. The information comes from TC 25-8.

A-8. GUIDE TO THE UNIT STRATEGIES. This paragraph provides a guide to reading the collective, gunnery, and soldier components. Generally, the leader using the matrices for planning will have a METL (or other list of critical tasks in which his unit must be proficient) and will be looking for guidance about appropriate training methods. The key to using CATS for unit training management is understanding the strategy and its various components. The strategy is organized by functional area and echelon to be trained. It has eight interactive components, expressed as columns in a matrix format. An example matrix for one mission/task is at Table A-1. The columns provide the following information:

- Column One records the mission and supporting tasks requiring training. The entries in Column One consist of the appropriate MTP missions and tasks.
- Column Two shows the desired frequency of and interval between repetitions of the task(s). Both the unit's personnel turnover rate and the rate of progress need to be considered in determining how frequently to train.
- Column Three lists alternative "training means"--combinations of events and media (live or simulation)--that might be selected to train this mission/task. You must select an appropriate means for each time you intend to conduct training.
- Column Four lists the estimated duration of each means (determined by the event more than by the medium). You will need to be sure that there is time available.
- Column Five shows a means quality rating, related to the cost and realism of the event/medium. When choosing events and media, you will have to balance the resource costs of different training media against the needs for realism and repetition. Generally, as your unit becomes more proficient, realism should increase.

– An "A" level means is identified as a CTC deployment and training activity.

– A "B" level means is described as a well assigned home station training exercise.

– A "C" level means is described as a partial task training exercise.

– A "D" level means is described as a subtask training exercise.

- Column Six identifies the training unit/audience for the event. The information in this column is drawn from the appropriate MTP.

- Column Seven gives the prerequisite training (training "gates") that should be attained by the members of the training audience prior to the execution of the means in Column 3. If the training audience has not attained the specified level of proficiency, the means cannot achieve the quality indicated in Column 5.

- Column Eight provides a place to record detailed comments concerning the purpose and desired outcome of each event along with other remarks or guidance. DEPLOY/REDEPLOY

Table A-1. Example CATS Task Matrix

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4	Column 5	Column 6	Column 7	Column 8
<u>Task</u>	<u>Freq/ Interval</u>	<u>Means (Event/ Media)</u>	<u>Estimated Duration</u>	<u>Quality (A-D)</u>	<u>Training Unit (Audience)</u>	<u>Prerequisite Training Gates</u>	Remarks: Includes purpose of event; outcome being supported; comments about execution of the event/ constraints posed by <u>TADSS/et al</u>
RECALL PROCEDURES <u>XX-X-XXXX</u> To train company on recall procedures: Perform Deployment Alert Activities 63-2-8001	12/ Monthly	7 STX (Telephonic/ Non-telephonic Alert)	2-3 hrs.	C	Battalion	Telephonic and non-telephonic recall procedures and rosters current	PURPOSE: To verify recall rosters and procedures. OUTCOME: To maintain the ability to rapidly alert, assemble, prepare, deploy, marshal, and outload on any mode of transportation, all TOE equipment and personnel with minimum outside assistance. REMARKS: None.

Section III. INTEGRATION OF CATS IN THE PLANNING PROCESS

A-9. INTEGRATING CATS. This portion of the appendix explains how to integrate CATS into the planning process. It focuses on long range planning conducted at brigade and above. To understand how CATS fits into this process, a brief summary of Chapter 3, (Planning) from FM 25-101 is provided.

A-10. THE PLANNING PROCESS

a. Long Range Planning.

(1) **Assessment.** Assessment is the start of the long range planning process. Using their evaluations, the input of subordinate leaders and the results of training evaluations, commanders assess their unit's training level on METL tasks. The assessment serves as the basis for the commander's training strategy for sustainment and improvement training. Commanders at all levels do this assessment function. An integral part of the assessment is the identification of required training resources and shortfalls. The commander also must synchronize the actions of supporting units and agencies to ensure proper training execution.

(2) In creating their training strategy, commanders ensure that training:

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when, and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

The strategy that meets these requirements results in the commander's training guidance.

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

(3) Senior commanders (brigade and above) provide subordinate commanders with long range training calendars, the commander's training guidance, resources to train, and protection from training distorters. Commanders often provide recommended training events frequency.

b. Short-Range Planning. The short range planning process refines the guidance that results from the long range planning process. Subordinate commanders use this guidance to create their training calendars. Guidance on the short-range training process can be found in the CATS appendix in the unit's MTP.

A-11. CATS AND THE PLANNING PROCESS. CATS serves the unit commander as a training management and training resource identification tool. As a training management tool, it allows the unit commander to more efficiently manage his training program, with limited resource availability. As a training resource identification tool, it identifies the resources within the Army's inventory to conduct training. The availability of those resources will vary, depending on your location.

a. Long-Range Planning

(1) Assessment

(2) The CATS strategy:

- Is METL focused.
- Incorporates combined arms.
- Identifies who, when, and where to train.
- Has a logical sequence of execution.
- Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.
- Determines the frequencies of a given task.
- Coordinates all events.
- Matches resources to requirements.

(3) CATS provides a convenient vehicle for the transmission of the commander's training guidance. It serves as the basis for the long-range calendar.

It provides subordinate commanders with recommended frequencies of training events.

(4) Execution. The following example shows how CATS could fit into the long range planning process.

b. The Company/Detachment Maneuver Training Strategy lists the recommended frequencies for required annual training events. In particular, for the STX it lists 10 iterations. The optimal training frequency is for the company/detachment staff to train the event 10 times in a given year, 1 STX per month for 10 months. The frequencies listed in CATS would be trained as follows:

- 2 events per year - semi-annual training
- 4 events per year - quarterly training
- 6 events per year - bimonthly training

c. Naturally, the training year may not support such a neat breakdown of training events. CATS gives you the flexibility to adjust the events to meet your particular requirements. A key point here is the idea of critical gates. As you can see, STX is a critical gate for FTX. You should conduct any event that is a critical gate, before conducting the more complex task. Gates serve to ensure that basic tasks essential to the successful performance of complex tasks are trained and evaluated prior to the performance of complex tasks. Critical gates may also serve as a type of preview or "rehearsal" for a follow-on training event.

d. Assume that your commander has identified platoon leadership as a particular weakness in your unit. Your commander decides that he wants to run platoon STX exercises twice a month to train the platoon/section/crew/squad leadership elements.

e. Using this guidance you simply go to the company strategy and substitute 24 for 12. If the frequencies for the other events are acceptable, you now have a coupled commander's strategy. In this manner a CATS base strategy is tailored to meet a commander's assessment and training needs.

f. Short Range Planning. The application of CATS Battalion Staff and headquarters Company/Detachment's unit training strategies to battalion short range planning and the battalion quarterly training calendar is seen as follows:

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

Recommended Company/Detachment Calendar Using CATS Maneuver Strategy.

1st Month

Week 1	Drill Training (1)
Week 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4	STX (2)

NOTES:

1. The collective tasks trained during the weekly Cell/Staff/Section training periods support company METL tasks and are trained according to the commander's assessment and his priorities for staff training outlines in the CTG. Soldier training tasks trained during this month are soldier/leader supporting performance of the collective tasks to be trained during the weekly staff training sessions or the monthly STX.

2. Performance of the STX substitutes for Cell/Staff/Section Training in week four (4).

2nd Month

Week 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 3	TOCEX (2)
Week 4	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)

Notes:

1. Training during these weekly periods concentrates on staff METL tasks identified as priority in the CTG. Training time here could also be spent training tasks evaluated as NO GO during the 1st month's training periods. LCXs and MCXs can also be used to enhance staff coordination.

2. Performance of the TOCEX substitutes for performance of the monthly STAFFEX that would be conducted here. Commanders may have to modify or extend the training period of the TOCEX to include training tasks that would have been normally performed in the STAFFEX.

3. Tasks trained here can be tasks rated as NO GO during the previous week's TOCEX.

3rd Month

Week 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 2	TEWT (1)
Week 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
Week 4	CPX (2)

Notes:

1. This TEWT substitutes for performance of the Call/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed this week. Ideally, the TEWTs discussion points and learning objectives would be developed to support/reinforce collective tasks trained in the previous month's Cell/Staff/Section, STAFFEX or TOCEX training periods. The commander may also structure the TEWT to train staff coordination and integration tasks as key for the upcoming CPX.

2. Substitutes for performance of the STAFFEX that would normally be performed during the month.

As seen in the above, the commander structures his training program using recommended CATS training events, frequencies and critical gates to support METL training. Weekly or monthly training events can be conducted independently or integrated into other collective training exercises.

In scheduling training, the commander should take maximum advantage of higher headquarters directed events to accomplish his recommended CATS training events.

g. Horizontal and Vertical Integration. In executing this training strategy, the commander vertically integrates his training requirements with the battalion's/group's training requirements. Additionally, the company's training strategy is horizontally integrated with other companies in the battalion to ensure that combined arms training is effected.

Appendix B

Battlefield Operating Systems

B-1. MANEUVER. The employment of forces on the battlefield through movement and direct fires in combination with fire support, or fire potential to achieve a position of advantage in respect to enemy ground forces in order to accomplish the mission. This includes direct fire systems (such as small arms, tank guns, and attack helicopter fires).

a. **Move.** To position forces (units and equipment) relative to the enemy to secure or retain positional advantage making full use of terrain and formation. It is the dynamic element of combat – the means of concentrating forces at the critical point to achieve the surprise, psychological shock, physical momentum, and moral dominance which enables smaller forces to defeat larger ones. Units supporting combat maneuver units are included since they are expected to go wherever the combat unit goes.

Note: Movement of cargo, equipment, and personnel is covered under the Combat Service Support BOS.

b. **Engage Enemy.** To enter into conflict or combat on the ground with the enemy using direct fire or close combat. Note: Air targets are covered in the Air Defense BOS.

c. **Control Terrain.** To dominate an area to prevent enemy occupation of the position through fire, fire potential, or occupation of the terrain.

B-2. FIRE SUPPORT. The collective and coordinated use of target acquisition data, indirect fire weapons, armed aircraft (less attack helicopters) and other lethal and nonlethal means against ground targets in support of maneuver force operations (FM 6-20). It includes artillery, mortar, and other non line-of-sight fires, and naval countermeasures.

a. **Process Ground Targets.** To select targets and match the appropriate response to them, taking account of operational requirements and capabilities.

b. **Engage Ground Targets.** To enter into with the enemy using fire support systems.

B-3. AIR DEFENSE. All measures designed to nullify or reduce the effectiveness of attack by hostile aircraft or missiles after they are airborne (FM 44-100).

- a. Process Air Targets. To select targets and match the appropriate response to them, taking account of operational requirements and capabilities.
- b. Attack Enemy Aircraft. To intercept, engage, destroy, or neutralize enemy aircraft and missiles in flight.
- c. Deny Airspace. To prevent enemy use of airspace through fire potential or other means without direct attack of air targets (for example, deliberate smoke, barrage balloons).

B-4. COMMAND AND CONTROL. The exercise of authority and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned forces in the accomplishment of the mission. Command and control functions employed by a commander in planning, directing, coordinating, and controlling forces and operations in the accomplishment of the mission.

- a. Acquire and Communicate Information and Maintain Status. To gain possession of information on the METT-TC, and weather, by or for the commander or his staff, to translate the information into usable form to retain and disseminate it.
- b. Assess Situation. To continuously evaluate information received through reports or the personal observations of the leader or commander to decide whether different actions are required from those that would result from the most recent orders issued.
- c. Determine Actions. To conduct the continuous process of making estimates and decisions for assigned or projected tasks. This function involves a detailed and systematic examination of all aspects of contemplated operations including deciding to alter planned or ongoing actions. This function includes the formulation of the commander's concept and intent.
- d. Direct and Lead Subordinate Forces. To provide direction to subordinate forces such as that they understand and contribute effectively to the attainment of the commander's concept and intent. This function includes the preparation and completion of orders.
- e. Employ Tactical C3CM. To integrate the use of operations security, tactical deception, tactical jamming, and physical destruction, supported by intelligence, to deny information, to influence, degrade, or destroy adversary tactical C3 capabilities and to protect friendly tactical C3 against such actions.

B-5. INTELLIGENCE. That knowledge of the enemy, weather, and geographical features required by the commander in planning and conducting tactical operations.

It is derived from an analysis of information on the enemy's environments (FM 34-130).

- a. Collect Information. To obtain information in any manner.
- b. Process information. To convert information into intelligence through collation, evaluation, analysis, integration, and interpretation.
- c. Prepare Intelligence Reports. To develop and produce standard reports and IPB products for the commander's use that report intelligence or information, to task intelligence assets, or to receive information, intelligence orders, or instructions.

B-6. MOBILITY AND SURVIVABILITY. The capability of the forces that permit freedom of movement relative to the enemy while retaining the ability to fulfill its primary mission. It also includes those measures that the force takes to remain viable and functional by protection from the effects of enemy weapon systems and natural occurrences.

- a. Provide Mobility. To provide freedom of movement for personnel and equipment on the battlefield without delays due to terrain or obstacles.
- b. Provide Countermobility. To delay, channel, or stop offensive movement by the enemy in order to destroy his forces directly or indirectly by enhancing the effectiveness of friendly indirect and direct weapon systems.
- c. Enhance Survivability. To protect personnel, equipment, and supplies for enemy systems and natural occurrences while simultaneously deceiving the enemy.

B-7. COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT. The support and assistance provided to sustain forces, primarily in the fields of logistics, personnel services, and health services.

- a. Arm. To provide munitions to weapon systems. This encompasses all types of ammunition to include mines and demolition munitions.
- b. Fuel. To provide fuel and petroleum products (petroleum, oils, and lubricants) to keep weapon systems and other equipment operational.
- c. Fix. To preserve the availability of weapon systems and equipment. It includes providing repair parts and end items at the right place and time, and all the actions taken before, during, and after battle to keep equipment operational.

ARTEP 63-385-MTP

d. Man the Force. To provides all support to the individual soldier as well as provide healthy, fit soldiers to units.

e. Distribute. To provide the various classes of supplies to military units by employing transportation and supply services.

f. Provide Sustainment Engineering. To repair and construct facilities and lines of communications.

e. Provide Military Police Support. To provide enemy prisoner of war collection, evacuation, and internment, and to enforce military law and order.

GLOSSARY

- Numbers -

1SG First Sergeant (E8)

- A -

AACG	Arrival Airfield Control Group
AAR	After Action Review
ABCS	Army Battle Command System
ACS	Army Community Service
ADC	Area Damage Control
ADP	Automated Data Processing
AER	Army Emergency Relief
AG	Adjutant General
ALCE	Airlift Control Element
AM	Amplitude Modulation
AO	Area of Operations
APOD	Aerial Port Of Debarkation
APOE	Aerial Port Of Embarkation
AR	Army Regulation Armor
ARC	American Red Cross
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
A/SPOE	Aerial/Sea Port of Embarkation
ASAS	All-Source Analysis System
ASAT	Automated Systems Approach to Training
ASB	Aviation Support Battalion
ASP	Ammunition Supply Point
ATP	Ammunition Transfer Point
ATTN	Attention
AUEL	Automated Unit Equipment List

- B -

BCOC	Base Cluster Operations Center
BCT	Brigade Combat Team
BDAR	Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
BFACS	Battlefield Functional Area Control System
BLTM	Battalion Level Training Model
BOS	Battlefield Operating System
BSA	Brigade Support Area

BSC Base Support Company

- C -

C2 Command and Control
CALFEX Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise
CAS Close Air Support
CATS Combined Arms Training Strategy
CFX Command Field Exercise
CHS Combat Health Services
CMO Civil Military Operations/Office/Officer
COA Course of Action
COMSEC Communication Security
CONPLAN Contingency Plan
CONUS Continental United States
COOP Continuity of Operations Plan
CP Command Post
CPX Command Post Exercise
CSM Command Sergeant Major
CSS Combat Service Support
CSSAMO Combat Service Support Automation Management Officer/Office
CSSCS Combat Service Support Control System
CTG Command Training Guidance
CTIL Commander's Tracked Items List

- D -

DA Department of the Army
DACG Departure Airfield Control Group
DAMMS-R Department of the Army Movement Management System -
Revised
DAO Division Ammunition Officer/Office
DE Directed Energy
DEL Deployment Equipment List
DISCOM Division Support Command
DOL Director of Logistics
DS Direct Support
DSA Division Support Area
DTG Date-Time Group

- E -

EAD Echelons Above Division
ECCM Electronic Counter Countermeasures

EEFI	Essential Elements of Friendly Information
ELSEC	Electronic Security
EOC	Emergency Operations Center
EOD	Explosive Ordnance Disposal
EPW	Enemy Prisoner of War
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival

- F -

FAD	Force Activity Designator
FASCAM	Family of Scatterable Mines
FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command, Brigade and Below
FM	Field Manual
	Frequency Modulation
FNS	Foreign Nation Support
FRAGO	Fragmentary Order
FSB	Forward Support Battalion
FSC	Forward Support Company
FSG	Family Support Group
FSMC	Forward Support Medical Company
FTX	Field Training Exercise

- G -

GMC	Ground Maintenance Company
-----	----------------------------

- H -

HHC	Headquarters and Headquarters Company
HN	Host Nation
HQ	Headquarters
HSC	Headquarters and Supply Company
HUMINT	Human Intelligence

- I -

IAW	In Accordance With
IC	Installation Coordinator
ICUMO	Installation Coordinator Unit Movement Officer
INTSUM	Intelligence Summary
IPB	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield
IR	Intelligence Requirements
ITO	Installation Transportation Officer/Office

- K -

KIA Killed In Action

- L -

LCX Logistical Coordination Exercise

LOC Lines of Communication
Logistics Operations Center

LOG Logistics

LOGPAC Logistics Package

LOGSITREP Logistics Situation Report

LOGSTAT Logistics Status

LP Listening Post

LTA Local Training Area

- M -

MA Marshalling Area

Mortuary Affairs

MAPEX Map Exercise

MCA Movement Control Agency

MCP Maintenance Collection Point

MCS Maintenance Control Section

Maneuver Control System

MCT Movement Control Team

MCX Maneuver Coordination Exercise

MEDEVAC Medical Evacuation

MEDLOG Medical Logistics

METL Mission Essential Task List

METT-TC Mission, Enemy, Terrain, Troops, Time Available, and Civilian
Considerations

MHE Material Handling Equipment

MIA Missing In Action

MIJI Meaconing, Intrusion, Jamming, and Interference

MIL Master Incident List

MILES Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement Simulation

MMC Materiel Management Center

MOBPLAN Mobilization Plan

MOPP Mission Oriented Protective Posture

MOS Military Occupational Specialty

MOUT Military Operations in Urban Terrain

MP Military Police

MQS Military Qualification Standards

MSR	Main Supply Route
MST	Maintenance Support Team
MTMC	Military Traffic Management Command
MTP	Mission Training Plan
MTS	Movement Tracking System
MWR	Morale, Welfare, and Recreation

- N -

NAI	Named Area of Interest
NBC	Nuclear, Biological, Chemical
NCO	Noncommissioned Officer
NCOIC	Noncommissioned Officer in Charge
NCS	Net Control Station
NLT	Not Later Than

- O -

OC	Observer Controller
OCONUS	Outside the Continental United States
OEG	Operational Exposure Guidance
OFS	Officer Foundation System
OIC	Officer in Charge
OP	Observation Post
OPFOR	Opposing Forces
OPLAN	Operations Plan
OPLOGPLN	Operations Logistics Planner
OPORD	Operations Order
OPSEC	Operational Security
OPTEMPO	Operational Tempo
OR	Operational Readiness

- P -

PAC	Personnel and Administrative Center
PAO	Public Affairs Office/Officer
PERSTAT	Personnel Status Report
PEWS	Platoon Early Warning System
PIR	Priority Intelligence Requirements
	Personnel Information Roster
PKG	Packaged
PL	Platoon Leader
PLL	Prescribed Load List
PMCS	Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services

PMCT	Port Movement Control Team
PMO	Provost Marshall Office
POD	Port of Debarkation
POL	Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants
POV	Privately Owned Vehicle
PSA	Port Support Activity
PX	Post Exchange

- R -

RAA	Redeployment Assembly Area
RC	Reserve Component
RCPOC	Rear Command Post Operations Center
RP	Release Point
RSO&I	Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration
RSOP	Redeployment Standing Operating Procedures
RTD	Return To Duty
RTF	Regeneration Task Force

- S -

S1	Adjutant / Personnel Officer
S2/S3	Intelligence and Operations Officer
S4	Supply Officer
S6	Communication/Electronics Officer
SA	Situational Awareness
	Staging Area
SAMS2	Standard Army Maintenance System - 2
SATS	Standard Army Training System
SCPE	Simplified Collective Protective Equipment
SDO	Staff Duty Officer
SIDPERS	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
SIGINT	Signal Intelligence
SIGSEC	Signal Security
SITMAP	Situation Map
SITREP	Situation Report
SJA	Staff Judge Advocate
SM	Soldier's Manual
SMCT	Soldier's Manuals Of Common Tasks
SOI	Signal Operating Procedures
SOP	Standing Operating Procedures
SP	Start Point
SPBS-R	Standard Property Book System - Redesign
SPOD	Seaport Of Debarkation

SPOE	Seaport Of Embarkation
SPOTREP	Spot Report
SRP	Soldier Readiness Processing
SSI	Standing Signal Instruction
STAFFEX	Staff Exercise
STAMIS	Standard Army Management Information System
STP	Soldier Training Publication
STRAC	Standards in Training Commission
STRIKEWARN	Strike Warning of Friendly Nuclear Fire
STX	Situational Training Exercise

- T -

T&EO	Task and Evaluation Outline
TAA	Tactical Assembly Area
TADDS	Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations
TB	Technical Bulletin
TC	Training Circular
TCF	Tactical Combat Force
TDY	Temporary Duty
TEWT	Tactical Exercise Without Troops
TEXMIS	Training Module Executive Management Information System
TG	Trainer's Guide
TM	Technical Manual
TMCA	Theater Movement Control Agency
TOC	Tactical Operations Center
TOCEX	Tactical Operations Center Exercise
TOE	Table of Organization and Equipment
TRADOC	(US Army) Training and Doctrine Command
TSB	Theater Staging Base
TSOP	Tactical Standing Operating Procedures

- U -

UAA	Unit Assembly Area
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UIC	Unit Identification Code
UMC	Unit Movement Coordinator
	Unit Movement Code
UMD	Unit Movement Data
UMO	Unit Movement Officer
UPW	Unit Proficiency Worksheet
USCS	United States Custom Service
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture

- W -

WARNO Warning Order

- X -

XO Executive Officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Army Regulations

AR 27-10	Military Justice
AR 190-13	The Army Physical Security Program
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting
AR 220-10	Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM)
AR 230-1	Nonappropriated Funds and Related Activities
AR 340-2	Maintenance and Disposition of Records in TOE Units of Active Army, the Army Reserve, and National Guard
AR 340-18-Series	The Army Functional File System
AR 350-1	Army Training
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program
AR 385-10	Army Safety Program
AR 380-15	Safeguarding Classified NATO Information
AR 530-1	Operations Security
AR 608-1	Army Community Service
AR 614-185	Requisitions and Assignment Instructions for Officers
AR 614-200	Selection of Enlisted Soldiers for Training and Assignment
AR 640-10	Individual Military Personnel Records
AR 672-5-1	Military Awards
AR 710-2	Supply Policy below the Wholesale Level
AR 710-3	Asset transaction Reporting System

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA Pamphlet 350-38	Standards in Weapons Training
DA Pamphlet 600-8-1	SIDPERS Battalion S1 Level Procedures
DA Pamphlet 600-8-2	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures
DA Pamphlet 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures

Field Manuals

FM 3-3	NBC Contamination Avoidance
FM 3-4	NBC Protection
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination
FM 3-100	NBC Operations

FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations
FM 8-15	Medical Support in Divisions, Separate brigades, and the Armored Cavalry Regiment
FM 8-35	Evacuation of the Sick and Wounded
FM 9-6	Munitions Support in Theater of Operations
FM 9-38	Conventional Ammunition Unit Operations
FM 9-43-1	Maintenance Operations and Procedures
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and BDAR
FM 10-14-2	Guide for the Battalion S4
FM 10-15	Basic Doctrine Manual for Supply and Storage
FM 10-16	General Fabric Repair
FM 10-24	Ration Breakdown Point Operations
FM 10-27	General Supply in a Theater of Operations
FM 10-52	Field Water Supply
FM 10-60	Subsistence Supply and Management in Theaters of Operations
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations
FM 10-67	Petroleum Supply in Theaters of Operations
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations
FM 10-67-2	Petroleum Laboratory Testing and Operations
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine
FM 12-15	Wartime Casualty Reporting
FM 14-7	Finance operations
FM 16-1	Religious Support Doctrine: The Chaplain and Chaplain Assistant
FM 19-30	Physical Security
FM 21-31	Topographic Symbols
FM 22-9	Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations
FM 22-51	Leaders Manual for Combat Stress Control
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques
FM 24-20	Field Wire and Field Cable Techniques
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
FM 24-64	Electronic Security (ELSEC) Techniques Counter-Counter Measures
FM 26-2	Management of Stress in Army Operations
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis

FM 34-10	Division Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
FM 34-80	Electronic Warfare Operations
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation Of The Battlefield
FM 42-414	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Field Service Company, Direct Support
FM 55-1	Army Transportation Services in a Theater of Operations
FM 55-10	Movement Control in a Theater of Operations
FM 55-15	Transportation Reference Data
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment by Surface Transportation
FM 63-2-2	Division Support Command (Digitized)
FM 63-20-1	Forward Support Battalion (Digitized)
FM 63-21-1	Division Support Battalion (Digitized)
FM 63-23-2	Division Aviation Support Battalion (Digitized)
FM 100-5	Operations (How to Fight)
FM 100-9	Reconstitution
FM 100-10	Combat Service Support
FM 100-15	Corps operations
FM 100-17-series	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Symbols

JOINT PUBLICATIONS

DOD Directive 4500.9-R Defense Transportation Regulation – Part III, Mobility

Other Product Types

OPLOG Planner	Operations Logistics Planner
TOE 63385F000	Aviation Support Battalion, Division Support Command, Digitized Division

Technical Manuals

TM 9-1300-206	Ammunition and Explosive Standards
---------------	------------------------------------

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine
AR 105-2	(C) Electronic Counter-Countermeasures (ECCM) - Electronic Warfare Susceptibility and Vulnerability (U)
AR 105-3	Reporting, Meaconing, Intrusion, Jamming and Interference of Electromagnetic Systems
AR 380-40	(C) Policy for Safeguarding and Controlling COMSEC Information (U)
AR 530-2	Communications Security
AR 530-3	(C) Electronic Security
AR 530-4	(C) Electronic Security (U)
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Reporting and Memorial Affairs and Line of Duty Investigations
AR 700-84	Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policies

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA Pamphlet 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System: Manual Procedures
DA Pamphlet 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 31 October 1989.

Field Manuals

FM 5-20	Camouflage
FM 5-103	Survivability
FM 7-30	Infantry, Airborne, and Air Assault Brigade Operations
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures
FM 8-10-7	Health Service Support in an NBC Environment (Final Draft)
FM 8-34	Food Sanitation for the Supervisor, 30 December 1983
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries
FM 10-13	Supply and Service Reference Data
FM 10-23	Army Food Service Operations
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations

FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Supply and Field Service Operations
FM 10-27-3	Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for Quartermaster Headquarters Operations
FM 10-63	Handling of Deceased Personnel in Theaters of Operations
FM 11-32	Combat Net Radio Operations
FM 12-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation
FM 19-40	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons
FM 20-3	Camouflage
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team
FM 21-11	First Aid For Soldiers
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance Procedures
FM 21-26	Map Reading and Land Navigation
FM 21-60	Visual Signals
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Air Land Battle
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook
FM 24-35	(O) Communication-Electronics Operations Instructions (CEOI)
FM 24-35-1	Signal Supplemental Instructions
FM 34-54	Battlefield Technical Intelligence
FM 44-8	Small Unit Self Defense Against Air Attack
FM 44-30	Visual Aircraft Recognition
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning
FM 55-450-1	Army Helicopter External Load Operations
FM 63-23-1	Division Aviation Support Battalion (Digitized)
FM 71-2	The Tank And Mechanized Infantry Battalion Task Force
FM 71-3	Armored and Mechanized Infantry Brigade
FM 100-27	US Army/US Air Force Doctrine for Joint Airborne and Tactical Airlift Operations

Other Product Types

OPLOG Planner	Operations Logistics Planner
TRADOC Pam 525-6	Operations Security - Doctrinal Guidelines for Tactical Units and Trainers

Technical Bulletins

TB Medical 530 Occupational and Environmental Health Food Service Sanitation

Technical Manuals

TM 750-244-2 Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command)

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (U.S. Army Tank-Automotive Command)

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Class 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090, and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use

TM 10-500-7 Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment, Airdrop Recovery Procedures; TO 13C7-1-10

TM 38-250 Packaging of Materials Handling: Preparing of Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipment, 15 January 1988.

Training Circulars

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques

Soldier's Training Publications

STP 9-63H34-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide MOS 63H Track Vehicle Repairer Skill Levels 3 and 4

STP 10-92A1-SM Soldier's Manual MOS 92A Automated Logistics Specialist Skill Level 1

STP 10-92A24-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide MOS 92A Automated Logistics Specialist Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4

STP 10-94G25-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide MOS 94G Food Service Specialist Skill Level 2,3, 4 and 5

STP 21-1-SMCT Soldier's Manual Of Common Tasks Skill Level 1

STP 21-24-SMCT Soldier's Manual Of Common Tasks Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4

STP 21-I-MQS Military Qualifications Standards I, Manual of Common Tasks

STP 21-II-MQS Military Qualifications Standards II, Manual of Common Tasks

STP 55-88N24-SM Soldier's Manual MOS 88N Movements Specialist Skill Level 2, 3, and 4

QUESTIONNAIRE
MISSION TRAINING PLAN USER FEEDBACK

MTP NUMBER: _____ DATE: _____

MTP TITLE: _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided for your use. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: Commander, U.S. Army Combined Arms Support Command, 401 1st Street, Suite 229, ATTN: ATCL-A, Fort Lee, Virginia 23801

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (CDR, XO, Staff, Plt Ldr, Plt Sgt, Section Chief, Section NCOIC, etc.)?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____
3. How long have you served in this unit? _____
4. What is your component? A. AC B. RC
5. What is your unit? A. CONUS B. USAREUR
 C. USARPAC D. 8TH USA
 E. Other (specify) _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GERNERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?
 - A. Has made training worse. _____

 - B. Has made training better. _____

 - C. Has had no effect on training. _____

- D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

7. How easy is this product to use compared to other training products?
- A. More difficult. _____

- B. Easier. _____

- C. About the same. _____

- D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

8. What part of the MTP was least useful?
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

- C. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines. _____

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful?
- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

- C. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines. _____

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

10. What chapter of the MTP was the most difficult to understand?

- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

- C. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines. _____

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

- F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

- G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

11. What was the easiest part of the MTP to understand?

- A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

- B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

- C. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines. _____

- D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

- E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES
(STX AND FTX).

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well did they fulfill their intended purpose?

A. They did not prepare the unit at all. _____

B. They helped, but only provided 20% or less of my unit's training requirements.

C. They helped, but only provided 21% to 50% of my unit's training requirements.

D. They helped, but only provided 51% to 80% of my unit's training requirements.

E. They provided 81% or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX or TX be added or deleted from the MTP (specify FTX or STX)?

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

I. Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.

J. Do not know or have no opinion.

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

I. Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.

J. Do not know or have no opinion.

16. How many STX's or FTX's have you trained or participated in personally?

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

D. The performance measures are too detailed. _____

E. The performance measures are not detailed enough. _____

F. The performance measures do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

G. Do not change, chapter is fine. _____

H. Do not know or have no opinion. _____

18. What changes would you make to this Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

A. Leave it out altogether. _____

B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

C. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation. _____

D. The performance measures are too detailed. _____


E. The performance measures are not detailed enough. _____

F. The performance measures do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:


JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
9926708

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121643, requirements for ARTEP 63-385-MTP.

PIN: 077679-000